



- (72) THORSETT, EUGENE D., US
(72) ASHWELL, SUSAN, US
(72) GRANT, FRANCINE S., US
(72) KONRADI, ANDREI W., US
(72) KREFT, ANTHONY, US
(72) LOMBARDO, LUIS JOHN, US
(72) PLEISS, MICHAEL A., US
(72) SARANTAKIS, DIMITRIOS, US
(72) SEMKO, CHRISTOPHER M., US
(71) ELAN PHARMACEUTICALS, INC., US
(71) AMERICAN HOME PRODUCTS CORPORATION, US
(51) Int.Cl.⁷ C07K 5/078, A61K 38/05
(30) 1997/07/31 (08/920,353) US
(54) **COMPOSES DE TYPE 4-AMINO-PHENYLALANINE INHIBANT
UNE ADHESION DE LEUCOCYTES REGULEE PAR VLA-4**
(54) **4-AMINO-PHENYLALANINE TYPE COMPOUNDS WHICH
INHIBIT LEUKOCYTE ADHESION MEDIATED BY VLA-4**

(57) L'invention concerne des composés se liant à VLA-4. Certains de ces composés inhibent également une adhésion de leucocytes et, notamment, une adhésion de leucocytes régulée par VLA-4. Ces composés s'utilisent pour le traitement d'affections inflammatoires chez un patient mammalien, par exemple un humain, l'affection consistant par exemple en asthme, maladie d'Alzheimer, athérosclérose, syndrome démentiel du SIDA, diabète, affection intestinale inflammatoire, polyarthrite rhumatoïde, transplantation de tissus, métastase tumorale et ischémie myocardique. Les composés peuvent également être administrés pour le traitement d'affections cérébrales inflammatoires telles que la sclérose en plaques.

(57) Disclosed are compounds which bind VLA-4. Certain of these compounds also inhibit leukocyte adhesion and, in particular, leukocyte adhesion mediated by VLA-4. Such compounds are useful in the treatment of inflammatory diseases in a mammalian patient, e.g. human, such as asthma, Alzheimer's disease, atherosclerosis, AIDS dementia, diabetes, inflammatory bowel disease, rheumatoid arthritis, tissue transplantation, tumor metastasis and myocardial ischemia. The compounds can also be administered for the treatment of inflammatory brain diseases such as multiple sclerosis.

**PCT**WORLD INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY ORGANIZATION
International Bureau

INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(51) International Patent Classification ⁶ : C07K 5/078, A61K 38/05	A1	(11) International Publication Number: WO 99/06434 (43) International Publication Date: 11 February 1999 (11.02.99)
(21) International Application Number: PCT/US98/15312 (22) International Filing Date: 30 July 1998 (30.07.98) (30) Priority Data: 08/920,353 31 July 1997 (31.07.97) US (63) Related by Continuation (CON) or Continuation-in-Part (CIP) to Earlier Application US 08/920,353 (CON) Filed on 31 July 1997 (31.07.97) (71) Applicants (for all designated States except US): ATHENA NEUROSCIENCES, INC. [US/US]; 800 Gateway Boulevard, South San Francisco, CA 94080 (US). AMERICAN HOME PRODUCTS CORPORATION [US/US]; 5 Giraldi Farms, Madison, NJ 07940 (US). (72) Inventors; and (75) Inventors/Applicants (for US only): ASHWELL, Susan [GB/US]; 1015 Aspen Drive, Plainsboro, NJ 08536 (US). GRANT, Francine, S. [FR/US]; 3735 Sacramento Street, San Francisco, CA 94118 (US). KONRADI, Andrei, W. [US/US]; 95 Cervantes #105, San Francisco, CA 94123 (US). KREFT, Anthony [US/US]; 43 Barley Court,		Langhorne, PA 19047 (US). LOMBARDO, Louis, John [US/US]; 412 South Woods Road, Belle Mead, NJ 08502 (US). PLEISS, Michael, A. [US/US]; 848 Stella Court, Sunnyvale, CA 94087 (US). SARANTAKIS, Dimitrios [US/US]; 262 Sentinel Avenue, Newtown, PA 18940 (US). SEMKO, Christopher, M. [CA/US]; 2361 Carpenter Court, Fremont, CA 94539 (US). THORSETT, Eugene, D. [US/US]; 571 Buena Vista Street, Moss Beach, CA 94038 (US). (74) Agents: SWISS, Gerald, F. et al.; Burns, Doane, Swecker & Mathis, L.L.P., P.O. Box 1404, Alexandria, VA 22313-1404 (US). (81) Designated States: AL, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BY, CA, CH, CN, CU, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, GB, GE, GH, GM, HR, HU, ID, IL, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, NO, NZ, PL, PT, RO, RU, SD, SE, SG, SI, SK, SL, TJ, TM, TR, TT, UA, UG, US, UZ, VN, YU, ZW, ARIPO patent (GH, GM, KE, LS, MW, SD, SZ, UG, ZW), Eurasian patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, CH, CY, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG). Published <i>With international search report.</i> <i>Before the expiration of the time limit for amending the claims and to be republished in the event of the receipt of amendments.</i>
(54) Title: 4-AMINO-PHENYLALANINE TYPE COMPOUNDS WHICH INHIBIT LEUKOCYTE ADHESION MEDIATED BY VLA-4 (57) Abstract Disclosed are compounds which bind VLA-4. Certain of these compounds also inhibit leukocyte adhesion and, in particular, leukocyte adhesion mediated by VLA-4. Such compounds are useful in the treatment of inflammatory diseases in a mammalian patient, e.g. human, such as asthma, Alzheimer's disease, atherosclerosis, AIDS dementia, diabetes, inflammatory bowel disease, rheumatoid arthritis, tissue transplantation, tumor metastasis and myocardial ischemia. The compounds can also be administered for the treatment of inflammatory brain diseases such as multiple sclerosis.		

**4-AMINO-PHENYLALANINE TYPE COMPOUNDS
WHICH INHIBIT LEUKOCYTE ADHESION MEDIATED BY VLA-4**

CROSS-REFERENCE TO RELATED APPLICATIONS

This application claims the benefit of U.S. Provisional Application No. 60/____,____, which was converted pursuant to 37 C.F.R. § 1.53(c)(2)(i) from U.S. Patent Application No.08/920,353, filed July 31, 1997, which application is incorporated herein by reference in its entirety.

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

Field of the Invention

This invention relates to compounds which inhibit leukocyte adhesion and, in particular, leukocyte adhesion mediated by VLA-4.

5 References

The following publications, patents and patent applications are cited in this application as superscript numbers:

- | | |
|----|--|
| 10 | ¹ Hemler and Takada, <i>European Patent Application Publication No. 330,506</i> , published August 30, 1989 |
| | ² Elices, et al., <i>Cell</i> , <u>60</u> :577-584 (1990) |
| 15 | ³ Springer, <i>Nature</i> , <u>346</u> :425-434 (1990) |
| | ⁴ Osborn, <i>Cell</i> , <u>62</u> :3-6 (1990) |
| | ⁵ Vedder, et al., <i>Surgery</i> , <u>106</u> :509 (1989) |
| 20 | ⁶ Pretolani, et al., <i>J. Exp. Med.</i> , <u>180</u> :795 (1994) |
| | ⁷ Abraham, et al., <i>J. Clin. Invest.</i> , <u>93</u> :776 (1994) |
| | ⁸ Mulligan, et al., <i>J. Immunology</i> , <u>150</u> :2407 (1993) |
| 25 | ⁹ Cybulsky, et al., <i>Science</i> , <u>251</u> :788 (1991) |

-- 2 --

- 10 Li, et al., *Arterioscler. Thromb.*, 13:197 (1993)
- 11 Sasseville, et al., *Am. J. Path.*, 144:27 (1994)
- 5 12 Yang, et al., *Proc. Nat. Acad. Science (USA)*, 90:10494 (1993)
- 13 Burkly, et al., *Diabetes*, 43:529 (1994)
- 10 14 Baron, et al., *J. Clin. Invest.*, 93:1700 (1994)
- 15 Hamann, et al., *J. Immunology*, 152:3238 (1994)
- 16 Yednock, et al., *Nature*, 356:63 (1992)
- 15 17 Baron, et al., *J. Exp. Med.*, 177:57 (1993)
- 18 van Dinther-Janssen, et al., *J. Immunology*, 147:4207 (1991)
- 20 19 van Dinther-Janssen, et al., *Annals. Rheumatic Dis.*, 52:672 (1993)
- 20 Elices, et al., *J. Clin. Invest.*, 93:405 (1994)
- 25 21 Postigo, et al., *J. Clin. Invest.*, 89:1445 (1991)
- 22 Paul, et al., *Transpl. Proceed.*, 25:813 (1993)
- 23 Okarhara, et al., *Can. Res.*, 54:3233 (1994)
- 30 24 Paavonen, et al., *Int. J. Can.*, 58:298 (1994)
- 25 Schadendorf, et al., *J. Path.*, 170:429 (1993)
- 35 26 Bao, et al., *Diff.*, 52:239 (1993)
- 27 Lauri, et al., *British J. Cancer*, 68:862 (1993)
- 28 Kawaguchi, et al., *Japanese J. Cancer Res.*, 83:1304 (1992)
- 40 29 Kogan, et al., *U.S. Patent No. 5,510,332*, issued April 23, 1996
- 30 International Patent Appl. Publication No. WO 96/01644
- 45

-- 3 --

All of the above publications, patents and patent applications are herein incorporated by reference in their entirety to the same extent as if each individual publication, patent or patent application was specifically and individually indicated to be incorporated by reference in its entirety.

5

State of the Art

VLA-4 (also referred to as $\alpha 4\beta 1$ integrin and CD49d/CD29), first identified by Hemler and Takada¹, is a member of the $\beta 1$ integrin family of cell surface receptors, each of which comprises two subunits, an α chain and a β chain. VLA-4 contains an $\alpha 4$ chain and a $\beta 1$ chain. There are at least nine $\beta 1$ integrins, all sharing the same $\beta 1$ chain and each having a distinct α chain. These nine receptors all bind a different complement of the various cell matrix molecules, such as fibronectin, laminin, and collagen. VLA-4, for example, binds to fibronectin. VLA-4 also binds non-matrix molecules that are expressed by endothelial and other cells. These non-matrix molecules include VCAM-1, which is expressed on cytokine-activated human umbilical vein endothelial cells in culture. Distinct epitopes of VLA-4 are responsible for the fibronectin and VCAM-1 binding activities and each activity has been shown to be inhibited independently.²

20

Intercellular adhesion mediated by VLA-4 and other cell surface receptors is associated with a number of inflammatory responses. At the site of an injury or other inflammatory stimulus, activated vascular endothelial cells express molecules that are adhesive for leukocytes. The mechanics of leukocyte adhesion to endothelial cells involves, in part, the recognition and binding of cell surface receptors on leukocytes to the corresponding cell surface molecules on endothelial cells. Once bound, the leukocytes migrate across the blood vessel wall to enter the injured site and release chemical mediators to combat infection. For reviews of adhesion receptors of the immune system, see, for example, Springer³ and Osborn⁴.

25
30

-- 4 --

Inflammatory brain disorders, such as experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis (EAE), multiple sclerosis (MS) and meningitis, are examples of central nervous system disorders in which the endothelium/leukocyte adhesion mechanism results in destruction to otherwise healthy brain tissue. Large numbers of leukocytes migrate across the blood brain barrier (BBB) in subjects with these inflammatory diseases. The leukocytes release toxic mediators that cause extensive tissue damage resulting in impaired nerve conduction and paralysis.

In other organ systems, tissue damage also occurs via an adhesion mechanism resulting in migration or activation of leukocytes. For example, it has been shown that the initial insult following myocardial ischemia to heart tissue can be further complicated by leukocyte entry to the injured tissue causing still further insult (Vedder et al.⁵). Other inflammatory conditions mediated by an adhesion mechanism include, by way of example, asthma⁶⁻⁸, Alzheimer's disease, atherosclerosis⁹⁻¹⁰, AIDS dementia¹¹, diabetes¹²⁻¹⁴ (including acute juvenile onset diabetes), inflammatory bowel disease¹⁵ (including ulcerative colitis and Crohn's disease), multiple sclerosis¹⁶⁻¹⁷, rheumatoid arthritis¹⁸⁻²¹, tissue transplantation²², tumor metastasis²³⁻²⁸, meningitis, encephalitis, stroke, and other cerebral traumas, nephritis, retinitis, atopic dermatitis, psoriasis, myocardial ischemia and acute leukocyte-mediated lung injury such as that which occurs in adult respiratory distress syndrome.

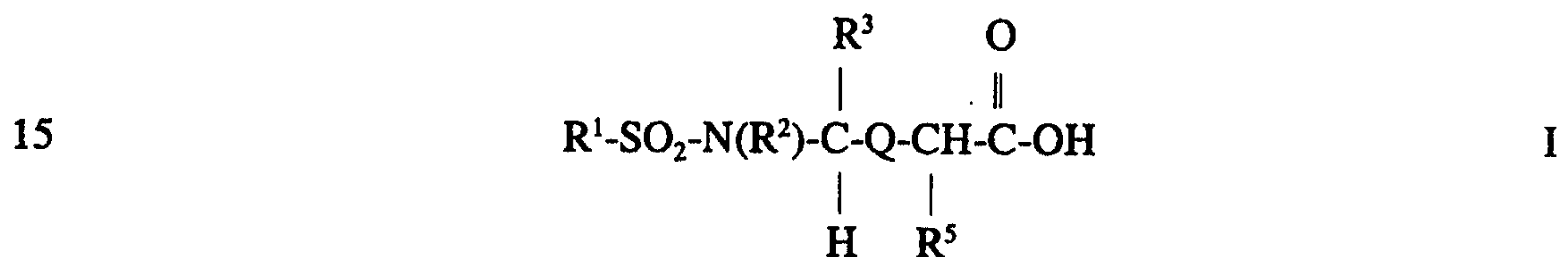
In view of the above, assays for determining the level of VLA-4 in a biological sample containing VLA-4 would be useful, for example, to diagnosis VLA-4 mediated conditions. Additionally, despite these advances in the understanding of leukocyte adhesion, the art has only recently addressed the use of inhibitors of adhesion in the treatment of inflammatory

-- 5 --

brain diseases and other inflammatory conditions^{29,30}. The present invention addresses these and other needs.

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

5 This invention provides compounds which bind to VLA-4. Such compounds can be used, for example, to assay for the presence of VLA-4 in a sample and, in pharmaceutical compositions, to inhibit cellular adhesion mediated by VLA-4, for example, binding of VCAM-1 to VLA-4. The compounds of this invention have a binding affinity to VLA-4 as expressed
10 by an IC₅₀ of about 15 μ M or less (as measured by Example 98 below) which compounds are defined by formula I below:



where

20 R¹ is selected from the group consisting of alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heterocyclic, substituted heterocyclic, heteroaryl and substituted heteroaryl;

R² is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, substituted
25 cycloalkenyl, heterocyclic, substituted heterocyclic, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, and R¹ and R² together with the nitrogen atom bound to R² and the SO₂ group bound to R¹ can form a heterocyclic or a substituted heterocyclic group;

R³ is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic, substituted heterocyclic and,
30 when R² does not form a heterocyclic group with R¹, R² and R³ together with

-- 6 --

the nitrogen atom bound to R^2 and the carbon atom bound to R^3 can form a heterocyclic or a substituted heterocyclic group;

R^5 is $-(CH_2)_x-Ar-R^{5'}$ where $R^{5'}$ is selected from the group consisting of $-NR^{12}C(Z)NR^8R^{8'}$ and $-NR^{12}C(Z)R^{13}$ wherein R^{12} is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl and aryl, R^8 and $R^{8'}$ are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heterocyclic, substituted heterocyclic, heteroaryl and substituted heteroaryl provided that when Z is oxygen, at least one of R^8 and $R^{8'}$ is substituted alkyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, saturated heterocyclic other than morpholino and thiomorpholino, substituted heterocyclic or R^8 and $R^{8'}$ can be joined to form a saturated heterocycle other than morpholino or thiomorpholino, a saturated substituted heterocycle or a saturated/unsaturated heterocycle having an amino group substituted with an alkoxycarbonyl substituent, and further provided that when Z is sulfur, at least one of R^8 and $R^{8'}$ is a group other than aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl or substituted heteroaryl, R^{13} is selected from the group consisting of saturated heterocycle other than morpholino and thiomorpholino, substituted heterocycle, and Z is selected from the group consisting of oxygen, sulfur and NR^{12} where R^{12} is as defined above,

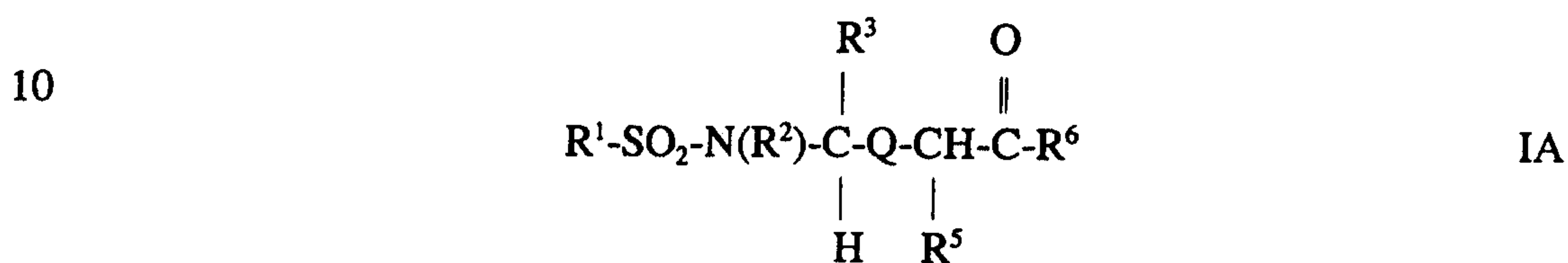
Ar is aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl or substituted heteroaryl,
 x is an integer of from 1 to 4;

Q is $-C(X)NR^7-$ wherein R^7 is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and alkyl; and X is selected from the group consisting of oxygen and sulfur;

and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof

with the proviso that when R^1 is $p-CH_3-\phi-$, Q is $-NHC(O)-$, and R^2 and R^3 are joined to form a pyrrolidinyl group, then R^5 is not $p-[-NHC(O)-2-(1-Boc-4-Cbz-piperazinyl)]$ -benzyl- or $p-[-NHC(O)-2-(1-Boc-piperazinyl)]$ -benzyl-.

In another embodiment, the compounds of this invention can also be provided as prodrugs which convert (e.g., hydrolyze, metabolize, etc.) *in vivo* to a compound of formula I above. In a preferred example of such an embodiment, the carboxylic acid of the compound of formula I is modified
 5 into a group which, *in vivo*, will convert to a carboxylic acid (including salts thereof). In a particularly preferred embodiment, such prodrugs are represented by compounds of formula IA:



15 where

R^1 is selected from the group consisting of alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heterocyclic, substituted heterocyclic, heteroaryl and substituted heteroaryl;

R^2 is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl,
 20 substituted alkyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, substituted cycloalkenyl, heterocyclic, substituted heterocyclic, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, and R^1 and R^2 together with the nitrogen atom bound to R^2 and the SO_2 group bound to R^1 can form a heterocyclic or a substituted heterocyclic group;

R^3 is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl,
 25 substituted alkyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic, substituted heterocyclic and, when R^2 does not form a heterocyclic group with R^1 , R^2 and R^3 together with the nitrogen atom bound to R^2 and the carbon atom bound to R^3 can form a
 30 heterocyclic or a substituted heterocyclic group;

R^5 is $-(\text{CH}_2)_x\text{-Ar-R}^{5'}$ where $\text{R}^{5'}$ is selected from the group consisting of $-\text{NR}^{12}\text{C(Z)NR}^8\text{R}^{8'}$ and $-\text{NR}^{12}\text{C(Z)R}^{13}$ wherein R^{12} is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl and aryl, R^8 and $\text{R}^{8'}$ are independently

selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl,
 aryl, substituted aryl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heterocyclic,
 substituted heterocyclic, heteroaryl and substituted heteroaryl provided that
 when Z is oxygen, at least one of R^8 and $R^{8'}$ is substituted alkyl, cycloalkyl,
 5 substituted cycloalkyl, saturated heterocyclic other than morpholino and
 thiomorpholino, substituted heterocyclic or R^8 and $R^{8'}$ can be joined to form
 a saturated heterocycle other than morpholino or thiomorpholino, a saturated
 substituted heterocycle or a saturated/unsaturated heterocycle having an
 amino group substituted with an alkoxycarbonyl substituent, and further
 10 provided that when Z is sulfur, at least one of R^8 and $R^{8'}$ is a group other
 than aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl or substituted heteroaryl, R^{13} is
 selected from the group consisting of saturated heterocycle other than
 morpholino and thiomorpholino, substituted heterocycle, and Z is selected
 from the group consisting of oxygen, sulfur and NR^{12} where R^{12} is as defined
 15 above,

Ar is aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl or substituted heteroaryl,

x is an integer of from 1 to 4;

R^6 is selected from the group consisting of 2,4-dioxo-tetrahydrofuran-
 3-yl (3,4-enol), amino, alkoxy, substituted alkoxy, cycloalkoxy, substituted
 20 cycloalkoxy, -O-(N-succinimidyl), -NH-adamantyl, -O-cholest-5-en-3- β -yl, -
 NHOY where Y is hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, and substituted
 aryl, -NH(CH₂)_pCOOY where p is an integer of from 1 to 8 and Y is as
 defined above, -OCH₂NR⁹R¹⁰ where R^9 is selected from the group consisting
 of -C(O)-aryl and -C(O)-substituted aryl and R^{10} is selected from the group
 25 consisting of hydrogen and -CH₂COOR¹¹ where R^{11} is alkyl, and -NHSO₂Z
 where Z is alkyl, substituted alkyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, aryl,
 substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic and
 substituted heterocyclic;

Q is $-C(X)NR^7-$ wherein R^7 is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and alkyl; and X is selected from the group consisting of oxygen and sulfur;

and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof

5 with the proviso that when R^1 is $p\text{-CH}_3\text{-}\phi$ -, Q is $-\text{NHC(O)}-$, and R^2 and R^3 are joined together with the nitrogen atom pendent to R^2 and the carbon atom pendent to R^3 to form a 3,3-dimethylpyrrolidinyl group, then R^5 is not $p\text{-}[(\text{piperidin-4-yl})\text{C(O)NH}]\text{-benzyl-}$.

10 Preferably, in the compounds of formula I and IA above, R^1 is selected from the group consisting of alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heterocyclic, substituted heterocyclic, heteroaryl and substituted heteroaryl. Even more preferably R^1 is selected from the group consisting of 4-methylphenyl, methyl, benzyl, *n*-butyl, 4-chlorophenyl, 1-
15 naphthyl, 2-naphthyl, 4-methoxyphenyl, phenyl, 2,4,6-trimethylphenyl, 2-(methoxycarbonyl)phenyl, 2-carboxyphenyl, 3,5-dichlorophenyl, 4-trifluoromethylphenyl, 3,4-dichlorophenyl, 3,4-dimethoxyphenyl, 4-($\text{CH}_3\text{C(O)NH-}$)phenyl, 4-trifluoromethoxyphenyl, 4-cyanophenyl, isopropyl, 3,5-di-(trifluoromethyl)phenyl, 4-*t*-butylphenyl, 4-*t*-butoxyphenyl, 4-
20 nitrophenyl, 2-thienyl, 1-N-methyl-3-methyl-5-chloropyrazol-4-yl, phenethyl, 1-N-methylimidazol-4-yl, 4-bromophenyl, 4-amidinophenyl, 4-methylamidinophenyl, 4- $[\text{CH}_3\text{SC(=NH)}]$ phenyl, 5-chloro-2-thienyl, 2,5-dichloro-4-thienyl, 1-N-methyl-4-pyrazolyl, 2-thiazolyl, 5-methyl-1,3,4-thiadiazol-2-yl, 4- $[\text{H}_2\text{NC(S)}]$ phenyl, 4-aminophenyl, 4-fluorophenyl, 2-
25 fluorophenyl, 3-fluorophenyl, 3,5-difluorophenyl, pyridin-3-yl, pyrimidin-2-yl, 4-(3'-dimethylamino-*n*-propoxy)-phenyl, and 1-methylpyrazol-4-yl.

Preferably, in the compounds of formula I and IA above, R^2 is hydrogen, methyl, phenyl, benzyl, $-(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{-2-thienyl}$, and $-(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{-}\phi$.

-- 10 --

In one embodiment, R^1 and R^2 together with the nitrogen atom bound to R^2 and the SO_2 group bound to R^1 are joined to form a heterocyclic group or substituted heterocyclic group. Preferred heterocyclic and substituted heterocyclic groups include those having from 5 to 7 ring atoms having 2 to 3 heteroatoms in the ring selected from nitrogen, oxygen and sulfur which ring is optionally fused to another ring such as a phenyl or cyclohexyl ring to provide for a fused ring heterocycle of from 10 to 14 ring atoms having 2 to 4 heteroatoms in the ring selected from nitrogen, oxygen and sulfur. Specifically preferred R^1/R^2 joined groups include, by way of example, benzisothiazolonyl (saccharin-2-yl).

In one preferred embodiment, R^2 and R^3 together with the nitrogen atom bound to the R^2 substituent and the carbon bound to the R^3 substituent form a heterocyclic group or a substituted heterocyclic group of 4 to 6 ring atoms having 1 to 2 heteroatoms in the ring selected from nitrogen, oxygen and sulfur, which ring is optionally substituted with 1 to 2 substituents selected from fluoro, methyl, hydroxy, amino, phenyl, thiophenyl and thiobenzyl, or can be fused to another ring such as a phenyl or cycloalkyl ring to provide for a fused ring heterocycle of from 10 to 14 ring atoms having 1 to 2 heteroatoms in the ring selected from nitrogen, oxygen and sulfur. Such heterocyclic rings include azetidiny (e.g., L-azetidiny), thiazolidiny (e.g., L-thiazolidiny), piperidiny (e.g., L-piperidiny), piperiziny (e.g., L-piperiziny), dihydroindolyl (e.g., L-2,3-dihydroindol-2-yl), tetrahydroquinoliny (e.g., L-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroquinolin-2-yl), thiomorpholiny (e.g., L-thiomorpholin-3-yl), pyrrolidiny (e.g., L-pyrrolidiny), substituted pyrrolidiny such as 4-hydroxypyrrolidiny (e.g., 4- α -(or β)-hydroxy-L-pyrrolidiny), 4-fluoropyrrolidiny (e.g., 4- α -(or β)-fluoro-L-pyrrolidiny), 3-phenylpyrrolidiny (e.g., 3- α -(or β)-phenyl-L-pyrrolidiny), 3-thiophenylpyrrolidiny (e.g., 3- α -(or β)-thiophenyl-L-pyrrolidiny),

-- 11 --

4-aminopyrrolidinyl (e.g., 4- α -(or β)-amino-L-pyrrolidinyl),
 3-methoxypyrrolidinyl (e.g., 3- α -(or β)-methoxy-L-pyrrolidinyl),
 4,4-dimethylpyrrolidinyl, substituted piperizinyl such as 4-N-Cbz-
 piperizinyl, substituted thiazolidinyl such as 5,5-dimethylthiazolidin-4-yl,
 5 1,1-dioxo-thiazolidinyl (e.g., L-1,1-dioxo-thiazolidin-2-yl), substituted
 1,1-dioxo-thiazolidinyl such as L-1,1-dioxo-5,5-dimethylthiazolidin-2-yl,
 1,1-dioxothiомorpholinyl (e.g., L-1,1-dioxo-thiomorpholin-3-yl) and the
 like.

10 Preferably, in the compounds of formula I and IA above, R³ includes
 all of the isomers arising by substitution with methyl, phenyl, benzyl,
 diphenylmethyl, -CH₂CH₂-COOH, -CH₂-COOH, 2-amidoethyl, *iso*-butyl,
t-butyl, -CH₂O-benzyl and hydroxymethyl. Additionally, in another
 preferred embodiment, R³ and R² together with the nitrogen atom bound to
 15 R² can form a heterocyclic group or substituted heterocyclic group.

Q is preferably -C(O)NH- or -C(S)NH-.

20 Preferably Ar is aryl or substituted aryl and more preferably phenyl
 or substituted phenyl. In another preferred embodiment, *x* is 1.

R⁵ is preferably selected from all possible isomers arising by
 substitution with the following groups:

4-[-NHC(O)CH(CH₃)NHBoc]benzyl, 4-[-NHC(O)CH(CH₂φ)NHBoc]-
 25 benzyl, 4-[-NHC(O)-(N-Boc)-pyrrolidin-2-yl]-benzyl-,
 4-[-NHC(S)NHCH₂CH₂CH₂-φ]-benzyl, 4-[-NHC(S)NHCH₂CH₂-φ]-benzyl,
 4-[-NHC(O)-(2',3'-dihydro-N-Boc-indol-2-yl)]-benzyl, 4-[-NHC(O)-3'-(N-
 Boc)-piperidinyl]-benzyl, 4-[-NHC(S)NHCH₂CH₂-(N-morpholino)]-benzyl,

-- 12 --

- 4-[-NHC(O)-4'-piperidinyl]benzyl, 4-[-NHC(O)-(1',2',3',4'-tetrahydro-N-Boc-isoquinolin-1'-yl)]-benzyl, 4-[-NHC(S)NHCH₂CH₂CH₂-(N-morpholino)]-benzyl, 4-[-NHC(S)NH(CH₂)₂-1-piperidinyl]-benzyl,
- 4-[-NHC(S)NH(CH₂)₃-N-morpholino]-benzyl, 4-[-NHC(O)-L-2'-pyrrolidinyl-N-SO₂-4'-methylphenyl]-benzyl, 4-[-NHC(O)-piperidin-3'-yl]-benzyl, 4-[-NHC(O)-(N-(4'-CH₃- ϕ -SO₂)-L-pyrrolidin-2'-yl)]-benzyl,
- 4-[-NHC(O)NHCH₂CH₂- ϕ]-benzyl, 4-[(1'-Cbz-piperidin-4'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl, 4-[(1'-Boc-piperidin-4'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl,
- 4-[-NHC(O)-1'-methylpiperidin-4'-yl]-benzyl, 4-[-NHC(O)-(1'-N-Boc)-piperidin-2'-yl]-benzyl, 4-[(Et)₂NCH₂CH₂CH₂NHC(S)NH-]benzyl,
- 4-[(1'-Boc-4'-hydroxypyrrolidin-2'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl, 4-[(ϕ CH₂CH₂CH₂NHC(S)NH-]benzyl, 4-[(perhydroindolin-2'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl, 4-[(1'-Boc-perhydroindolin-2'-yl)-C(O)NH-]benzyl,
- 4-[4'-hydroxypyrrolidin-2'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl, 4-(EtNHC(S)NH)benzyl, 4-(ϕ CH₂NHC(S)NH)benzyl, 3-[(1'-Boc-piperidin-2'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl,
- 3-[(1'-Boc-piperidin-4'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl, 3-[piperidin-2'-yl-C(O)NH-]benzyl, 3-[piperidin-4'-yl-C(O)NH-]benzyl, 3-[(1'-Boc-pyrrolidin-2'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl, 4-[(3'-Boc-thiazolidin-4'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl,
- 4-(CH₃-NHC(S)NH)benzyl-, 4-[(pyrrolidin-2'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl, 4-[(N-toluenesulfonylpyrrolidin-2'-yl)C(O)NH-]butyl,
- 4-[-NHC(O)-1'-N-Boc-piperidin-2'-yl]-benzyl, 4-[-NHC(O)-piperidin-2'-yl]-benzyl, 4-[(1'-N-Boc-2',3'-dihydroindolin-2'-yl)-C(O)NH]-benzyl, 4-[(1'-Cbz-piperidin-4'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl,
- 4-[-NHC(O)-(1',2',3',4'-tetrahydro-N-Boc-isoquinolin-3'-yl)]-benzyl, 4-[(1'-Boc-piperidin-4'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl, 4-[(1'-methoxycarbonylpiperidin-4'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl, 4-[(4'-phenylpiperidin-4'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl, 4-[(4'-phenyl-1'-Boc-piperidin-4'-yl)-C(O)NH-]benzyl,
- 4-[(4'-methylpiperazin-1'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl, 4-[(pyrrolidin-2'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl, 4-[-NHC(O)-piperidin-1'-yl]benzyl, 4-[(thiomorpholin-4'-yl sulfone)-C(O)NH-]benzyl, 4-[-NHC(O)-4'-(1-

benzylpiperidinyll)]benzyl, 4-[-NHC(O)-(1',2',3',4'-tetrahydro-N-Boc-quinolin-2'-yl)]-benzyl, 4-[(pyrrolidin-1'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl and 4-[(1-cyclopropylpiperidin-4'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl.

- 5 In the compounds of formula IA, R⁶ is preferably 2,4-dioxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl (3,4-enol), methoxy, ethoxy, *iso*-propoxy, *n*-butoxy, *t*-butoxy, cyclopentoxy, *neo*-pentoxy, 2- α -*iso*-propyl-4- β -methylcyclohexoxy, 2- β -isopropyl-4- β -methylcyclohexoxy, -NH₂, benzyloxy, -NHCH₂COOH, -NHCH₂CH₂COOH, -NH-adamantyl, 10 -NHCH₂CH₂COOCH₂CH₃, -NHSO₂-*p*-CH₃- ϕ , -NHOR⁸ where R⁸ is hydrogen, methyl, *iso*-propyl or benzyl, O-(N-succinimidyl), -O-cholest-5-en-3- β -yl, -OCH₂-OC(O)C(CH₃)₃, -O(CH₂)₂NHC(O)W where *z* is 1 or 2 and W is selected from the group consisting of pyrid-3-yl, N-methylpyridyl, and N-methyl-1,4-dihydro-pyrid-3-yl, -NR''C(O)-R' where 15 R' is aryl, heteroaryl or heterocyclic and R'' is hydrogen or -CH₂C(O)OCH₂CH₃.

Preferred compounds within the scope of formula I and IA above include by way of example:

- 20 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-[2S-1-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)pyrrolidine-2-carboxamido]-L-phenylalanine methyl ester
- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-[3-(3-phenylpropyl)thioureido]-L-phenylalanine methyl ester
- 25 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-[3-(2-phenylethyl)thioureido]-L-phenylalanine methyl ester
- 30 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-[1-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)indoline-2-carboxamido]-L-phenylalanine
- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-[*N*-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)nipecotamido]-L-phenylalanine

- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-{3-[2-(morpholin-4-yl)ethyl]-thioureido}-L-phenylalanine methyl ester
- 5 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-(isonipecotamido)-L-phenylalanine
- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-[3*S*-2-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinoline-3-carboxamido]-L-phenylalanine
- 10 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-{3-[2-(morpholin-4-yl)ethyl]-thioureido}-L-phenylalanine
- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-{3-[2-(morpholin-4-yl)ethyl]-thioureido}-L-phenylalanine methyl ester
- 15 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-{3-[2-(piperidin-1-yl)ethyl]-thioureido}-L-phenylalanine
- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-{3-[3-(morpholin-4-yl)propyl]-thioureido}-L-phenylalanine
- 20 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-[2*S*-1-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)pyrrolidine-2-carboxamido]-L-phenylalanine methyl ester
- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-(nipecotamido)-L-phenylalanine
- 25 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-[2*S*-1-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)pyrrolidine-2-carboxamido]-L-phenylalanine
- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-[3-(2-phenylethyl)ureido]-L-phenylalanine
- 30 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-(isonipecotamido)-L-phenylalanine methyl ester
- 35 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-(*N*-*tert*-butoxycarbonyl-isonipecotamido)-L-phenylalanine
- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-3-(*N*-*tert*-butoxycarbonyl-isonipecotamido)-L-phenylalanine methyl ester
- 40 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-3-(*N*-*tert*-butoxycarbonyl-isonipecotamido)-L-phenylalanine
- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-3-(isonipecotamido)-L-phenylalanine
- 45

- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-3-(*N*-*tert*-butoxycarbonyl-pipecolinamido)-L-phenylalanine methyl ester
- 5 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-3-(1-*tert*-butoxycarbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxamido)-L-phenylalanine methyl ester
- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-3-(1-*tert*-butoxycarbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxamido)-L-phenylalanine
- 10 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-(isonipecotamido)-L-phenylalanine ethyl ester
- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-(2*S*-1-*tert*-butoxycarbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxamido)-L-phenylalanine
- 15 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-{3-[3-(*N,N*-diethylamino)propyl]-thioureido}-L-phenylalanine methyl ester
- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-(2*S*-1-*tert*-butoxycarbonyl-4-hydroxypyrrolidine-2-carboxamido)-L-phenylalanine methyl ester
- 20 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-[3-(3-phenylpropyl)thioureido]-L-phenylalanine
- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-[perhydroindole-2-carboxamido]-L-phenylalanine
- 25 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-[3-(2-phenylethyl)thioureido]-L-phenylalanine
- 30 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-[1-*tert*-butoxycarbonyl-perhydroindole-2-carboxamido]-L-phenylalanine
- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-(2*S*-4-hydroxypyrrolidine-2-carboxamido)-L-phenylalanine methyl ester
- 35 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-[3-(ethyl)thioureido]-L-phenylalanine methyl ester
- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-(2*S*-1-*tert*-butoxycarbonyl-4-hydroxypyrrolidine-2-carboxamido)-L-phenylalanine
- 40 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-[3-(ethyl)thioureido]-L-phenylalanine
- 45

-- 16 --

- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-[3-(benzyl)thioureido]-L-phenylalanine methyl ester
- 5 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-3-(*N*-*tert*-butoxycarbonyl-pipecolinamido)-L-phenylalanine
- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-3-(pipecolinamido)-L-phenylalanine
- 10 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-(2*R*-3-*tert*-butoxycarbonyl-thiazolidine-4-carboxamido)-L-phenylalanine
- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-(2*R*-3-*tert*-butoxycarbonyl-thiazolidine-4-carboxamido)-L-phenylalanine methyl ester
- 15 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-[3-(methyl)thioureido]-L-phenylalanine
- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-[3-(benzyl)thioureido]-L-phenylalanine
- 20 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-(5,5-dimethyl)thiaprolyl-4-(isonipecotamido)-L-phenylalanine
- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-(2*S*-pyrrolidine-2-carboxamido)-L-phenylalanine methyl ester
- 25 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-[1,4-di(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)piperazine-2-carboxamido]-L-phenylalanine methyl ester
- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-[1,4-di(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)piperazine-2-carboxamido]-L-phenylalanine
- 30 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-(piperazine-2-carboxamido)-L-phenylalanine
- 35 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-(*N*-*tert*-butoxycarbonyl-pipecolinamido)-L-phenylalanine
- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-(pipecolinamido)-L-phenylalanine
- 40 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-(*N*-*tert*-butoxycarbonylpipecolinamido)-L-phenylalanine methyl ester
- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-[1-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)indoline-2-carboxamido]-D-phenylalanine
- 45

- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-(*N*-carbobenzyloxy-isonipecotamido)-D-phenylalanine
- 5 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-2-(*tert*-butyl)glyciny-4-(isonipecotamido)-L-phenylalanine
- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-(thiamorpholin-3-carbonyl)-4-(*N*-*tert*-butoxycarbonylisonipecotamido)-L-phenylalanine methyl ester
- 10 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-(3,3-dimethyl)prolyl-4-(isonipecotamido)-L-phenylalanine
- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-(1,1-dioxothiamorpholin-3-carbonyl)-4-(*N*-*tert*-butoxycarbonylisonipecotamido)-L-phenylalanine
- 15 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-(thiamorpholin-3-carbonyl)-4-(*N*-*tert*-butoxycarbonylisonipecotamido)-L-phenylalanine
- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-(thiamorpholin-3-carbonyl)-4-(isonipecotamido)-L-phenylalanine
- 20 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-(1,1-dioxothiamorpholin-3-carbonyl)-4-(isonipecotamido)-L-phenylalanine
- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-(3,3-dimethyl)prolyl-4-[3*S*-2-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinoline-3-carboxamido]-L-phenylalanine
- 25 *N*-(4-bromobenzenesulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-(isonipecotamido)-L-phenylalanine
- 30 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-(3,3-dimethyl)prolyl-4-(*N*-*tert*-butoxycarbonylisonipecotamido)-L-phenylalanine ethyl ester
- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-(*N*-benzylisonipecotamido)-L-phenylalanine methyl ester
- 35 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-(3,3-dimethyl)prolyl-4-(*N*-*tert*-butoxycarbonylisonipecotamido)-L-phenylalanine ethyl ester
- 40 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-[2*S*-4-hydroxypyrrolidine-2-carboxamido]-L-phenylalanine
- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-[(1,1-dioxo)thiamorpholin-3-carbonyl]-L-4-(isonipecotamido)phenylalanine ethyl ester
- 45

-- 18 --

- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-[(1,1-dioxo)thiamorpholin-3-carbonyl]-L-4-(isonipecotamido)phenylalanine isopropyl ester
- 5 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-(pipecolinamido)-L-phenylalanine ethyl ester
- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-[2*S*-(*N*-*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-pipecolinamido]-L-phenylalanine ethyl ester
- 10 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-[3*S*-2-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinoline-3-carboxamido]-L-phenylalanine ethyl ester
- 15 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-[(1,1-dioxo)thiamorpholin-3-carbonyl]-L-4-(*N*-methoxycarbonylisonipecotamido)phenylalanine ethyl ester
- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-[(1,1-dioxo)thiamorpholin-3-carbonyl]-L-4-(isonipecotamido)phenylalanine cyclopentyl ester
- 20 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-L-4-(4-phenyl-isonipecotamido)phenylalanine ethyl ester
- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-L-4-(*N*-*tert*-butyloxycarbonyl-4-phenyl-isonipecotamido)phenylalanine ethyl ester
- 25 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-L-4-(isonipecotamido)phenylalanine ethyl ester
- N*-(α -toluenesulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-[1-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinoline-2-carboxamido]-L-phenylalanine ethyl ester
- 30 *N*-(α -toluenesulfonyl)-L-prolyl-L-4-(*N*-*tert*-butyloxycarbonyl-isonipecotamido)phenylalanine ethyl ester
- 35 *N*-(α -toluenesulfonyl)-L-prolyl-L-4-(isonipecotamido)phenylalanine
- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-[(1,1-dioxo)thiamorpholin-3-carbonyl]-L-4-(isonipecotamido)phenylalanine *n*-butyl ester
- 40 *N*-(α -toluenesulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-[1-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinoline-2-carboxamido]-L-phenylalanine
- N*-(α -toluenesulfonyl)-L-prolyl-L-4-(*N*-*tert*-butyloxycarbonyl-isonipecotamido)phenylalanine
- 45

- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-*L*-prolyl-*L*-4-(*N*-*tert*-butoxycarbonyl-4-phenyl-isonipecotamido)phenylalanine
- 5 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-*L*-prolyl-*L*-4-(*N*-benzyloxycarbonyl-isonipecotamido)phenylalanine ethyl ester
- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-*L*-prolyl-4-[2*S*-1-pyrrolidine-2-carboxamido]-*L*-phenylalanine
- 10 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-*L*-[(1,1-dioxo)thiamorpholin-3-carbonyl]-*L*-4-(isonipecotamido)phenylalanine *tert*-butyl ester
- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-*N*-methyl- α -*t*-butylglycinyll-4-(*N*-benzyloxycarbonylisonipecotamido)phenylalanine methyl ester
- 15 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-*L*-(*N*-benzyloxycarbonylpiperizin-2-carbonyl)-*L*-4-(*N*-benzyloxycarbonylisonipecotamido)phenylalanine methyl ester
- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-*L*-prolyl-4-(4-methylpiperazin-1-ylcarbonylamino)-*L*-phenylalanine isopropyl ester
- 20 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-*L*-prolyl-*L*-4-(isonipecotamido)phenylalanine methyl ester
- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-*L*-(piperizin-2-carbonyl)-*L*-4-(isonipecotamido)phenylalanine methyl ester
- 25 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-*L*-prolyl-4-(4-cyclopropylpiperazin-1-ylcarbonylamino)-*L*-phenylalanine isopropyl ester
- 30 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-*L*-prolyl-4-(1-pyrrolidinyl)-*L*-phenylalanine *t*-butyl ester
- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-*L*-prolyl-4-(piperidine-1-carboxyamido)-*L*-phenylalanine *t*-butyl ester
- 35 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-*L*-prolyl-*L*-4-[(1,1-dioxo)thiamorpholin-3-carboxyamido]phenylalanine *t*-butyl ester
- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-*L*-prolyl-4-(2-methylpyrrolidine-1-carboxyamido)-*L*-phenylalanine ethyl ester
- 40 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-*L*-(5,5-dimethyl)-thiaprolyl-4-[3*S*-2-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinoline-3-carboxamido]-*D*-phenylalanine *tert*-butyl ester
- 45

-- 20 --

N-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-(5,5-dimethyl)-thiaprolyl-4-[3S-2-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinoline-3-carboxamido]-L-phenylalanine tert-butyl ester

5 and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof as well as any of the ester compounds recited above wherein one ester is replaced with another ester selected from the group consisting of methyl ester, ethyl ester, *n*-propyl ester, isopropyl ester, *n*-butyl ester, isobutyl ester, *sec*-butyl ester and *tert*-butyl ester.

10

This invention also provides methods for binding VLA-4 in a biological sample which method comprises contacting the biological sample with a compound of formula I or IA above under conditions wherein said compound binds to VLA-4.

15

Certain of the compounds of formula I and IA above are also useful in reducing VLA-4 mediated inflammation *in vivo*.

20

This invention also provides pharmaceutical compositions comprising a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier and a therapeutically effective amount of one or more the compounds of formula I or IA above with the exception that R³ and R⁵ are derived from L-amino acids or other similarly configured starting materials. Alternatively, racemic mixtures can be used.

25

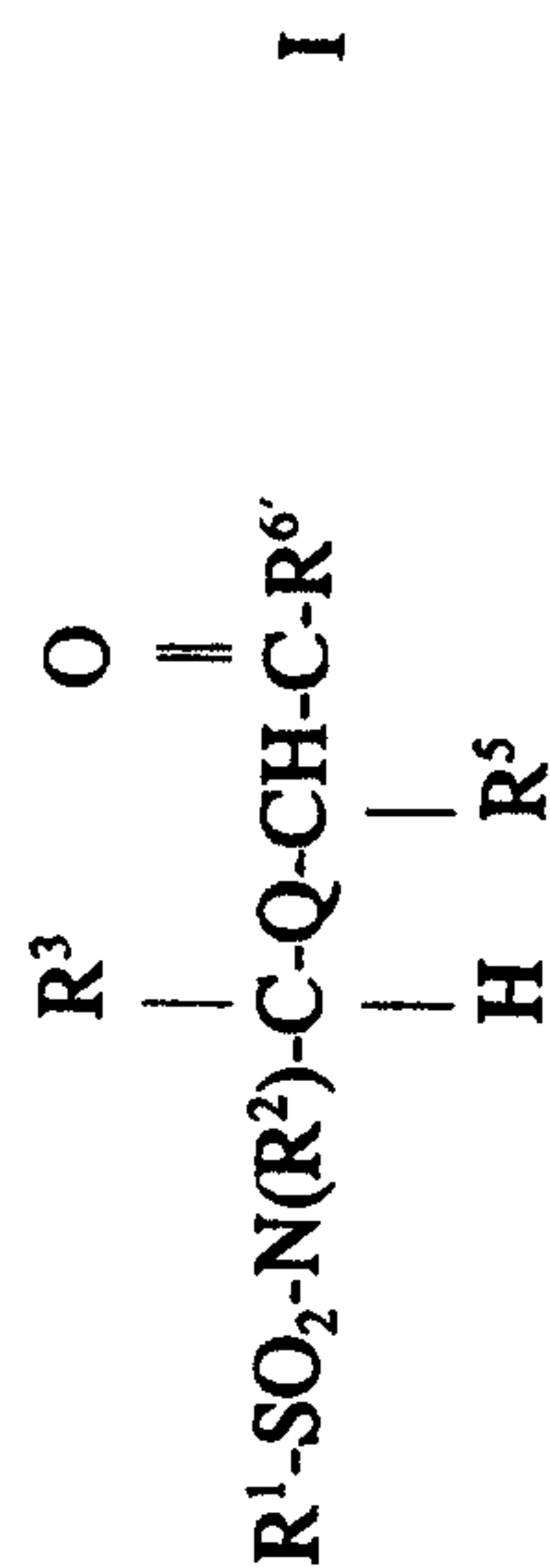
The pharmaceutical compositions may be used to treat VLA-4 mediated disease conditions. Such disease conditions include, by way of example, asthma, Alzheimer's disease, atherosclerosis, AIDS dementia, diabetes (including acute juvenile onset diabetes), inflammatory bowel disease (including ulcerative colitis and Crohn's disease), multiple sclerosis, 30 rheumatoid arthritis, tissue transplantation, tumor metastasis, meningitis, encephalitis, stroke, and other cerebral traumas, nephritis, retinitis, atopic

-- 21 --

dermatitis, psoriasis, myocardial ischemia and acute leukocyte-mediated lung injury such as that which occurs in adult respiratory distress syndrome.

5 Accordingly, this invention also provides methods for the treatment of an inflammatory disease in a patient mediated by VLA-4 which methods comprise administering to the patient the pharmaceutical compositions described above.

10 Preferred compounds of formula I and IA above include those set forth in Table I below:


$$Q = -C(O)NR^7-$$

R ¹	R ²	R ³	R ⁵	R ⁶	R ⁷
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyl)		<i>p</i> -[-NHC(O)-(N-Boc)-L- pyrrolidin-2-yl)]-benzyl-	-OCH ₃	H
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyl)		<i>p</i> -[-NHC(S)NHCH ₂ CH ₂ CH ₂ -φ]-benzyl-	-OCH ₃	H
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyl)		<i>p</i> -[-NHC(S)NHCH ₂ CH ₂ -φ]-benzyl-	-OCH ₃	H
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyl)		<i>p</i> -[-NHC(O)-(2,3-dihydro-N-Boc- indol-2-yl)]-benzyl-	-OH	H

R ¹	R ²	R ³	R ⁵	R ⁶	R ⁷
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyl)		<i>p</i> -[-NHC(O)-3-(N-Boc)-piperidinyl]-benzyl-	-OH	H
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyl)		<i>p</i> -[-NHC(S)NHCH ₂ CH ₂ -(N-morpholino)]- benzyl-	-OCH ₃	H
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyl)		<i>p</i> -[-NHC(O)-4-piperidinyl]-benzyl-	-OH	H
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyl)		<i>p</i> -[-NHC(O)-(1,2,3,4-tetrahydro- N-Boc-isoquinolin-3-yl)]-benzyl-	-OH	H
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyl)		<i>p</i> -[-NHC(S)NHCH ₂ CH ₂ -(N-morpholino)]- benzyl-	-OH	H
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyl)		<i>p</i> -[-NHC(S)NHCH ₂ CH ₂ CH ₂ -(N- morpholino)]-benzyl-	-OCH ₃	H
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyl)		<i>p</i> -[-NHC(S)NH(CH ₂) ₂ -1-piperidinyl]-benzyl-	-OH	H

R ¹	R ²	R ³	R ⁵	R ⁶	R ⁷
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>p</i> -[-NHC(S)NH(CH ₂) ₃ -N-morpholino]- benzyl-	-OH	H
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>p</i> -[-NHC(O)-L-2-pyrrolidinyI-N-SO ₂ - <i>p</i> - methylphenyl]-benzyl-	-OCH ₃	H
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>p</i> -[-NHC(O)-piperidin-3-yl]-benzyl-	-OH	H
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>p</i> -[-NHC(O)-(N-(<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-SO ₂)-L- pyrrolidin-2-yl)]-benzyl-	-OH	H
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>p</i> -[-NHC(O)NHCH ₂ CH ₂ -φ]-benzyl-	-OH	H
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>p</i> -[(piperidin-4-yl)C(O)NH-]-benzyl-	-OCH ₃	H
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>p</i> -[(1-Boc-piperidin-4-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OH	H

R ¹	R ²	R ³	R ⁵	R ⁶	R ⁷
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>m</i> -[(1-Boc-piperidin-4-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OCH ₃	H
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>m</i> -[(1-Boc-piperidin-4-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OH	H
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>m</i> -[(piperidin-4-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OH	H
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>m</i> -[(1-Boc-piperidin-2-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OCH ₃	H
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>m</i> -[(1-Boc-pyrrolidin-2-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OCH ₃	H
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>m</i> -[(1-Boc-pyrrolidin-2-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OH	H
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>p</i> -[(piperidin-4-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OCH ₂ CH ₃	H

R ¹	R ²	R ³	R ⁵	R ⁶	R ⁷
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>p</i> -[(1-Boc-pyrrolidin-2-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OH	H
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>p</i> -[(Et) ₂ NCH ₂ CH ₂ CH ₂ NHC(S)NH-]benzyl-	-OCH ₃	H
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>p</i> -[(1-Boc-4-hydroxypyrrolidin-2-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OCH ₃	H
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>p</i> -[φCH ₂ CH ₂ CH ₂ NHC(S)NH-]benzyl-	-OH	H
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>p</i> -[(perhydroindolin-2-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OH	H
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>p</i> -[φCH ₂ CH ₂ CH ₂ NHC(S)NH-]benzyl-	-OH	H
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>p</i> -[(1-Boc-perhydroindolin-2-yl)-C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OH	H

R ¹	R ²	R ³	R ⁵	R ⁶	R ⁷
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>p</i> -[(4-hydroxypyrrolidin-2-yl)- C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OCH ₃	H
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>p</i> -(EtNHC(S)NH)benzyl-	-OCH ₃	H
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>p</i> -[(1-Boc-4-hydroxypyrrolidin-2-yl) C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OH	H
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>p</i> -[(Et) ₂ NCH ₂ CH ₂ NHC(S)NH-]benzyl-	-OH	H
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>p</i> -(φCH ₂ NHC(S)NH)benzyl-	-OCH ₃	H
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>m</i> -[(1-Boc-piperidin-2-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OH	H
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>m</i> -[(piperidin-2-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OH	H

R ¹	R ²	R ³	R ⁵	R ⁶	R ⁷
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>p</i> -[(3-Boc-thiazolidin-4-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OH	H
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>p</i> -[(3-Boc-thiazolidin-4-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OCH ₃	H
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>p</i> -(CH ₃ -NHC(S)NH)benzyl-	-OH	H
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>p</i> -(φCH ₂ NHC(S)NH)benzyl-	-OH	H
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic -CH ₂ -S-C(CH ₃) ₂ - (L-5,5-dimethylthiazolidin-4-yl)		<i>p</i> -[(piperidin-4-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OH	H
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>p</i> -[(pyrrolidin-2-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OCH ₃	H
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>p</i> -[(1,4-di(Boc)piperazin-2-yl)-C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OCH ₃	H

R ¹	R ²	R ³	R ⁵	R ^{6'}	R ⁷
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>p</i> -[(1,4-di(Boc)piperazin-2-yl)- C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OH	H
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>p</i> -[(piperazin-2-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OH	H
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>p</i> -[(1-Boc-piperidin-2-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OH	H
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>p</i> -[(piperidin-2-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OH	H
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>p</i> -[(1-Boc-piperidin-2-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OCH ₃	H
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>p</i> -[(1-Boc-2,3-dihydroindolin-2-yl)- C(O)NH]-benzyl-	-OH	H
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>p</i> -[(1-Cbz-piperidin-4-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OH	H

-- 30 --

R ¹	R ²	R ³	R ⁵	R ⁶	R ⁷
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	H	<i>tert</i> -butyl	<i>p</i> -[(piperidin-4-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OH	H
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic -CH ₂ CH ₂ -S-CH ₂ - (L-thiomorpholin- 3-yl)		<i>p</i> -[(1-Boc-piperidin-4-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OCH ₃	H
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic -CH ₂ -CH ₂ -C(CH ₃) ₂ - (L-4,4- dimethylpyrrolidinyl)		<i>p</i> -[(piperidin-4-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OH	H
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic -CH ₂ CH ₂ -SO ₂ -CH ₂ - (L-1,1-dioxothiomorpholin- 3-yl)		<i>p</i> -[(1-Boc-piperidin-4-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OH	H
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic -CH ₂ CH ₂ -S-CH ₂ - (L-thiomorpholin- 3-yl)		<i>p</i> -[(1-Boc-piperidin-4-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OH	H
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic -CH ₂ CH ₂ -S-CH ₂ - (L-thiomorpholin- 3-yl)		<i>p</i> -[(piperidin-4-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OH	H

R ¹	R ²	R ³	R ⁵	R ⁶	R ⁷
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic -CH ₂ CH ₂ -SO ₂ -CH ₂ - (L-1,1-dioxthiomorpholin- 3-yl)		<i>p</i> -[(piperidin-4-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OH	H
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic -CH ₂ CH ₂ C(CH ₃) ₂ -		<i>p</i> -(2-Boc-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinolin-3-yl- C(O)NH-)benzyl-	-OH	H
<i>p</i> -Br-φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidiny)		<i>p</i> -[(piperidin-4-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OH	H
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic -CH ₂ CH ₂ C(CH ₃) ₂ - (L-4,4- dimethylpyrrolidiny)		<i>p</i> -[(1-Boc-piperidin-4-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OCH ₂ CH ₃	H
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidiny)		<i>p</i> -[(1-benzylpiperidin-4-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OCH ₃	H
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic -CH ₂ CH ₂ C(CH ₃) ₂ - (L-4,4- dimethylpyrrolidiny)		<i>p</i> -[(piperidin-4-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OCH ₂ CH ₃	H
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidiny)		<i>p</i> -[(4-hydroxypyrrolidin-2-yl)- C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OH	H

R ¹	R ²	R ³	R ⁵	R ⁶	R ⁷
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic -CH ₂ CH ₂ -SO ₂ -CH ₂ - (L-1,1-dioxothiomorpholin- 3-yl)		<i>p</i> -[(piperidin-4-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OCH ₂ CH ₃	H
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic -CH ₂ CH ₂ -SO ₂ -CH ₂ - (L-1,1-dioxothiomorpholin- 3-yl)		<i>p</i> -[(piperidin-4-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OCH(CH ₃) ₂	H
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidiny)		<i>p</i> -[(piperidin-2-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OCH ₂ CH ₃	H
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidiny)		<i>p</i> -[(1-Boc-piperidin-2-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OCH ₂ CH ₃	H
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidiny)		<i>p</i> -(2-Boc-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinolin-3-yl- C(O)NH-)benzyl-	-OCH ₂ CH ₃	H
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic -CH ₂ CH ₂ -SO ₂ -CH ₂ - (L-1,1-dioxothiomorpholin- 3-yl)		<i>p</i> -[(1-methoxycarbonylpiperidin-4- yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OCH ₂ CH ₃	H

R ¹	R ²	R ³	R ⁵	R ⁶	R ⁷
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic -CH ₂ CH ₂ -SO ₂ -CH ₂ - (L-1,1-dioxothiomorpholin- 3-yl)		<i>p</i> -[(piperidin-4-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-O-cyclopentyl	H
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>p</i> -[(4-phenylpiperidin-4-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OCH ₂ CH ₃	H
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>p</i> -[(4-phenyl-1-Boc-piperidin-4-yl)- C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OCH ₂ CH ₃	H
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>p</i> -[(piperidin-4-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OCH ₂ CH ₃	H
φ-CH ₂ -	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>p</i> -(1-Boc-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroquinolin-2-yl)- C(O)NH-)benzyl-	-OCH ₂ CH ₃	H
φ-CH ₂ -	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>p</i> -[(1-Boc-piperidin-4-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OCH ₂ CH ₃	H
φ-CH ₂ -	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>p</i> -[(piperidin-4-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OH	H

R ¹	R ²	R ³	R ⁵	R ⁶	R ⁷
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic -CH ₂ CH ₂ -SO ₂ -CH ₂ - (L-1,1-dioxothiomorpholin- 3-yl)		<i>p</i> -[(piperidin-4-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-O- <i>n</i> -butyl	H
φ-CH ₂ -	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidiny)		<i>p</i> -(1-Boc-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroquinolin-2-yl)- C(O)NH-)benzyl-	-OH	H
φ-CH ₂ -	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidiny)		<i>p</i> -[(1-Boc-piperidin-4-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OH	H
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidiny)		<i>p</i> -[(1-Boc-4-phenylpiperidin-4-yl)- C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OH	H
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidiny)		<i>p</i> -[(1-Cbz-piperidin-4-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OCH ₂ CH ₃	H
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidiny)		<i>p</i> -[(pyrrolidin-2-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OH	H
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic -CH ₂ CH ₂ -SO ₂ -CH ₂ - (L-1,1-dioxothiomorpholin- 3-yl)		<i>p</i> -[(piperidin-4-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OC(CH ₃) ₃	H

R ¹	R ²	R ³	R ⁵	R ⁶	R ⁷
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	CH ₃ -	<i>tert</i> -butyl-	<i>p</i> -[(1-Cbz-piperidin-4-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OCH ₃	H
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic -CH ₂ CH ₂ -(Cbz)NHCH ₂ - [L-4-N-(Cbz)-piperiziny]		<i>p</i> -[(1-Cbz-piperidin-4-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OCH ₃	H
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidiny)		<i>p</i> -[(4-methylpiperazin-1-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OCH(CH ₃) ₂	H
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidiny)		<i>p</i> -[(piperidin-4-yl)NH(O)C-]benzyl-	-OCH ₃	H
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic -CH ₂ CH ₂ -NH-CH ₂ - (L-piperiziny)		<i>p</i> -[(piperidin-4-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OCH ₃	H
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidiny)		<i>p</i> -[(1-cyclopropylpiperidin-4-yl)- C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OCH(CH ₃) ₂	H
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidiny)		<i>p</i> -[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OC(CH ₃) ₃	H
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidiny)		<i>p</i> -[(piperidin-1-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OC(CH ₃) ₃	H

R ¹	R ²	R ³	R ⁵	R ⁶	R ⁷
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>p</i> -[(2-methylpyrrolidin-1-yl)- C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OCH ₂ CH ₃	H
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>p</i> -{[(CH ₃) ₂ NC(S)I ₂ N-}benzyl-	-OCH ₃	H
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>p</i> -[(CH ₃) ₂ NC(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OCH ₃	H
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic -CH ₂ -S-C(CH ₃) ₂ - (L-5,5-dimethylthiazolidin- 4-yl)		<i>p</i> -[2-Boc-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinolin-3-yl)- C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OC(CH ₃) ₃	H

-- 37 --

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

As above, this invention relates to compounds which inhibit leukocyte adhesion and, in particular, leukocyte adhesion mediated by VLA-4. However, prior to describing this invention in further detail, the following terms will first be defined.

Definitions

As used herein, "alkyl" refers to alkyl groups preferably having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms and more preferably 1 to 6 carbon atoms. This term is exemplified by groups such as methyl, t-butyl, n-heptyl, octyl and the like.

"Substituted alkyl" refers to an alkyl group, preferably of from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, having from 1 to 5 substituents selected from the group consisting of alkoxy, substituted alkoxy, acyl, acylamino, thiocarbonylamino, acyloxy, amino, amidino, alkyl amidino, thioamidino, aminoacyl, aminocarbonylamino, aminothiocabonylamino, aminocarbonyloxy, aryl, substituted aryl, aryloxy, substituted aryloxy, aryloxyaryl, substituted aryloxyaryl, cyano, halogen, hydroxyl, nitro, carboxyl, carboxylalkyl, carboxyl-substituted alkyl, carboxyl-cycloalkyl, carboxyl-substituted cycloalkyl, carboxylaryl, carboxyl-substituted aryl, carboxylheteroaryl, carboxyl-substituted heteroaryl, carboxylheterocyclic, carboxyl-substituted heterocyclic, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, guanidino, guanidinosulfone, thiol, thioalkyl, substituted thioalkyl, thioaryl, substituted thioaryl, thiocycloalkyl, substituted thiocycloalkyl, thioheteroaryl, substituted thioheteroaryl, thioheterocyclic, substituted thioheterocyclic, heteroaryl, substituted aryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic, substituted heterocyclic, cycloalkoxy, substituted cycloalkoxy, heteroaryloxy, substituted heteroaryloxy, heterocyclyloxy, substituted heterocyclyloxy, oxycarbonylamino, oxythiocarbonylamino, -OS(O)₂-alkyl, -OS(O)₂-substituted alkyl, -OS(O)₂-aryl, -OS(O)₂-substituted aryl, -OS(O)₂-

-- 38 --

heteroaryl, -OS(O)₂-substituted heteroaryl, -OS(O)₂-heterocyclic, -OS(O)₂-substituted heterocyclic, -OSO₂-NRR where R is hydrogen or alkyl, -NRS(O)₂-alkyl, -NRS(O)₂-substituted alkyl, -NRS(O)₂-aryl, -NRS(O)₂-substituted aryl, -NRS(O)₂-heteroaryl, -NRS(O)₂-substituted heteroaryl, -NRS(O)₂-heterocyclic, -NRS(O)₂-substituted heterocyclic, -NRS(O)₂-NR-alkyl, -NRS(O)₂-NR-substituted alkyl, -NRS(O)₂-NR-aryl, -NRS(O)₂-NR-substituted aryl, -NRS(O)₂-NR-heteroaryl, -NRS(O)₂-NR-substituted heteroaryl, -NRS(O)₂-NR-heterocyclic, -NRS(O)₂-NR-substituted heterocyclic where R is hydrogen or alkyl, mono- and di-alkylamino, mono- and di-(substituted alkyl)amino, mono- and di-arylamino, mono- and di-substituted arylamino, mono- and di-heteroarylamino, mono- and di-substituted heteroarylamino, mono- and di-heterocyclic amino, mono- and di-substituted heterocyclic amino, unsymmetric di-substituted amines having different substituents selected from alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic and substituted heterocyclic and substituted alkyl groups having amino groups blocked by conventional blocking groups such as Boc, Cbz, formyl, and the like or alkyl/substituted alkyl groups substituted with -SO₂-alkyl, -SO₂-substituted alkyl, -SO₂-alkenyl, -SO₂-substituted alkenyl, -SO₂-cycloalkyl, -SO₂-substituted cycloalkyl, -SO₂-aryl, -SO₂-substituted aryl, -SO₂-heteroaryl, -SO₂-substituted heteroaryl, -SO₂-heterocyclic, -SO₂-substituted heterocyclic and -SO₂NRR where R is hydrogen or alkyl.

"Alkoxy" refers to the group "alkyl-O-" which includes, by way of example, methoxy, ethoxy, *n*-propoxy, *iso*-propoxy, *n*-butoxy, *tert*-butoxy, *sec*-butoxy, *n*-pentoxy, *n*-hexoxy, 1,2-dimethylbutoxy, and the like.

"Substituted alkoxy" refers to the group "substituted alkyl-O-".

"Acyl" refers to the groups H-C(O)-, alkyl-C(O)-, substituted alkyl-C(O)-, alkenyl-C(O)-, substituted alkenyl-C(O)-, alkynyl-C(O)-, substituted alkynyl-C(O)-, cycloalkyl-C(O)-, substituted cycloalkyl-C(O)-, aryl-C(O)-, substituted aryl-C(O)-, heteroaryl-C(O)-, substituted heteroaryl-C(O), heterocyclic-C(O)-, and substituted heterocyclic-C(O)- wherein alkyl, substituted alkyl, alkenyl, substituted alkenyl, alkynyl, substituted alkynyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic and substituted heterocyclic are as defined herein.

10

"Acylamino" refers to the group -C(O)NRR where each R is independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, alkenyl, substituted alkenyl, alkynyl, substituted alkynyl, aryl, substituted aryl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic, substituted heterocyclic and where each R is joined to form together with the nitrogen atom a heterocyclic or substituted heterocyclic ring wherein alkyl, substituted alkyl, alkenyl, substituted alkenyl, alkynyl, substituted alkynyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic and substituted heterocyclic are as defined herein.

20

"Thiocarbonylamino" refers to the group -C(S)NRR where each R is independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, alkenyl, substituted alkenyl, alkynyl, substituted alkynyl, aryl, substituted aryl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic, substituted heterocyclic and where each R is joined to form, together with the nitrogen atom, a heterocyclic or substituted heterocyclic ring wherein alkyl, substituted alkyl, alkenyl, substituted alkenyl, alkynyl, substituted alkynyl, cycloalkyl, substituted

25

-- 40 --

cycloalkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic and substituted heterocyclic are as defined herein.

"Acyloxy" refers to the groups alkyl-C(O)O-, substituted alkyl-C(O)O-, alkenyl-C(O)O-, substituted alkenyl-C(O)O-, alkynyl-C(O)O-, substituted alkynyl-C(O)O-, aryl-C(O)O-, substituted aryl-C(O)O-, cycloalkyl-C(O)O-, substituted cycloalkyl-C(O)O-, heteroaryl-C(O)O-, substituted heteroaryl-C(O)O-, heterocyclic-C(O)O-, and substituted heterocyclic-C(O)O- wherein alkyl, substituted alkyl, alkenyl, substituted alkenyl, alkynyl, substituted alkynyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic and substituted heterocyclic are as defined herein.

"Alkenyl" refers to alkenyl group preferably having from 2 to 10 carbon atoms and more preferably 2 to 6 carbon atoms and having at least 1 and preferably from 1-2 sites of alkenyl unsaturation.

"Substituted alkenyl" refers to alkenyl groups having from 1 to 5 substituents selected from the group consisting of alkoxy, substituted alkoxy, acyl, acylamino, thiocarbonylamino, acyloxy, amino, amidino, alkylamidino, thioamidino, aminoacyl, aminocarbonylamino, aminothiocarbonylamino, aminocarbonyloxy, aryl, substituted aryl, aryloxy, substituted aryloxy, aryloxyaryl, substituted aryloxyaryl, halogen, hydroxyl, cyano, nitro, carboxyl, carboxylalkyl, carboxyl-substituted alkyl, carboxyl-cycloalkyl, carboxyl-substituted cycloalkyl, carboxylaryl, carboxyl-substituted aryl, carboxylheteroaryl, carboxyl-substituted heteroaryl, carboxylheterocyclic, carboxyl-substituted heterocyclic, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, guanidino, guanidinosulfone, thiol, thioalkyl, substituted thioalkyl, thioaryl, substituted thioaryl, thiocycloalkyl, substituted thiocycloalkyl, thioheteroaryl, substituted thioheteroaryl,

thioheterocyclic, substituted thioheterocyclic, heteroaryl, substituted
 heteroaryl, heterocyclic, substituted heterocyclic, cycloalkoxy, substituted
 cycloalkoxy, heteroaryloxy, substituted heteroaryloxy, heterocyclyloxy,
 substituted heterocyclyloxy, oxycarbonylamino, oxythiocarbonylamino, -
 5 OS(O)₂-alkyl, -OS(O)₂-substituted alkyl, -OS(O)₂-aryl, -OS(O)₂-substituted
 aryl, -OS(O)₂-heteroaryl, -OS(O)₂-substituted heteroaryl, -OS(O)₂-
 heterocyclic, -OS(O)₂-substituted heterocyclic, -OSO₂-NRR where R is
 hydrogen or alkyl, -NRS(O)₂-alkyl, -NRS(O)₂-substituted alkyl, -NRS(O)₂-
 aryl, -NRS(O)₂-substituted aryl, -NRS(O)₂-heteroaryl, -NRS(O)₂-substituted
 10 heteroaryl, -NRS(O)₂-heterocyclic, -NRS(O)₂-substituted heterocyclic,
 -NRS(O)₂-NR-alkyl, -NRS(O)₂-NR-substituted alkyl, -NRS(O)₂-NR-aryl,
 -NRS(O)₂-NR-substituted aryl, -NRS(O)₂-NR-heteroaryl, -NRS(O)₂-NR-
 substituted heteroaryl, -NRS(O)₂-NR-heterocyclic, -NRS(O)₂-NR-substituted
 heterocyclic where R is hydrogen or alkyl, mono- and di-alkylamino, mono-
 15 and di-(substituted alkyl)amino, mono- and di-arylamino, mono- and di-
 substituted arylamino, mono- and di-heteroarylamino, mono- and di-
 substituted heteroarylamino, mono- and di-heterocyclic amino, mono- and
 di-substituted heterocyclic amino, unsymmetric di-substituted amines having
 different substituents selected from alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, substituted
 20 aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic and substituted
 heterocyclic and substituted alkenyl groups having amino groups blocked by
 conventional blocking groups such as Boc, Cbz, formyl, and the like or
 alkenyl/substituted alkenyl groups substituted with -SO₂-alkyl, -SO₂-
 substituted alkyl, -SO₂-alkenyl, -SO₂-substituted alkenyl, -SO₂-cycloalkyl,
 25 -SO₂-substituted cycloalkyl, -SO₂-aryl, -SO₂-substituted aryl, -SO₂-
 heteroaryl, -SO₂-substituted heteroaryl, -SO₂-heterocyclic, -SO₂-substituted
 heterocyclic and -SO₂NRR where R is hydrogen or alkyl.

"Alkynyl" refers to alkynyl group preferably having from 2 to 10 carbon atoms and more preferably 3 to 6 carbon atoms and having at least 1 and preferably from 1-2 sites of alkynyl unsaturation.

5 "Substituted alkynyl" refers to alkynyl groups having from 1 to 5 substituents selected from the group consisting of alkoxy, substituted alkoxy, acyl, acylamino, thiocarbonylamino, acyloxy, amino, amidino, alkylamidino, thioamidino, aminoacyl, aminocarbonylamino, aminothiocarbonylamino, aminocarbonyloxy, aryl, substituted aryl, aryloxy, substituted aryloxy, aryloxyaryl, substituted aryloxyaryl, halogen, hydroxyl, 10 cyano, nitro, carboxyl, carboxylalkyl, carboxyl-substituted alkyl, carboxyl-cycloalkyl, carboxyl-substituted cycloalkyl, carboxylaryl, carboxyl-substituted aryl, carboxylheteroaryl, carboxyl-substituted heteroaryl, carboxylheterocyclic, carboxyl-substituted heterocyclic, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, guanidino, guanidinosulfone, thiol, thioalkyl, 15 substituted thioalkyl, thioaryl, substituted thioaryl, thiocycloalkyl, substituted thiocycloalkyl, thioheteroaryl, substituted thioheteroaryl, thioheterocyclic, substituted thioheterocyclic, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic, substituted heterocyclic, cycloalkoxy, substituted cycloalkoxy, heteroaryloxy, substituted heteroaryloxy, heterocyclyloxy, substituted heterocyclyloxy, oxycarbonylamino, oxythiocarbonylamino, - OS(O)₂-alkyl, -OS(O)₂-substituted alkyl, -OS(O)₂-aryl, -OS(O)₂-substituted aryl, -OS(O)₂-heteroaryl, -OS(O)₂-substituted heteroaryl, -OS(O)₂-heterocyclic, -OS(O)₂-substituted heterocyclic, -OSO₂-NRR where R is 20 hydrogen or alkyl, -NRS(O)₂-alkyl, -NRS(O)₂-substituted alkyl, -NRS(O)₂-aryl, -NRS(O)₂-substituted aryl, -NRS(O)₂-heteroaryl, -NRS(O)₂-substituted heteroaryl, -NRS(O)₂-heterocyclic, -NRS(O)₂-substituted heterocyclic, -NRS(O)₂-NR-alkyl, -NRS(O)₂-NR-substituted alkyl, -NRS(O)₂-NR-aryl, -NRS(O)₂-NR-substituted aryl, -NRS(O)₂-NR-heteroaryl, -NRS(O)₂-NR-substituted heteroaryl, -NRS(O)₂-NR-heterocyclic, -NRS(O)₂-NR-substituted

WO 99/06434

PCT/US98/15312

--43--

NOT FURNISHED UPON FILING

-- 44 --

heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic and substituted heterocyclic are as defined herein.

"Aminocarbonyloxy" refers to the groups -NRC(O)O-alkyl,
 5 -NRC(O)O-substituted alkyl, -NRC(O)O-alkenyl, -NRC(O)O-substituted
 alkenyl, -NRC(O)O-alkynyl, -NRC(O)O-substituted alkynyl, -NRC(O)O-
 cycloalkyl, -NRC(O)O-substituted cycloalkyl, -NRC(O)O-aryl, -NRC(O)O-
 substituted aryl, -NRC(O)O-heteroaryl, -NRC(O)O-substituted heteroaryl,
 -NRC(O)O-heterocyclic, and -NRC(O)O-substituted heterocyclic where R is
 10 hydrogen or alkyl and wherein alkyl, substituted alkyl, alkenyl, substituted
 alkenyl, alkynyl, substituted alkynyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, aryl,
 substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic and
 substituted heterocyclic are as defined herein.

15 "Oxycarbonylamino" refers to the groups -OC(O)NH₂, -OC(O)NRR,
 -OC(O)NR-alkyl, -OC(O)NR-substituted alkyl, -OC(O)NR-alkenyl,
 -OC(O)NR-substituted alkenyl, -OC(O)NR-alkynyl, -OC(O)NR-substituted
 alkynyl, -OC(O)NR-cycloalkyl, -OC(O)NR-substituted cycloalkyl,
 -OC(O)NR-aryl, -OC(O)NR-substituted aryl, -OC(O)NR-heteroaryl,
 20 -OC(O)NR-substituted heteroaryl, -OC(O)NR-heterocyclic, and
 -OC(O)NR-substituted heterocyclic where R is hydrogen or alkyl, or where
 each R is joined to form, together with the nitrogen atom, a heterocyclic or
 substituted heterocyclic ring and wherein alkyl, substituted alkyl, alkenyl,
 substituted alkenyl, alkynyl, substituted alkynyl, cycloalkyl, substituted
 25 cycloalkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl,
 heterocyclic and substituted heterocyclic are as defined herein.

"Oxythiocarbonylamino" refers to the groups -OC(S)NH₂,
 -OC(S)NRR, -OC(S)NR-alkyl, -OC(S)NR-substituted alkyl, -OC(S)NR-
 30 alkenyl, -OC(S)NR-substituted alkenyl, -OC(S)NR-alkynyl, -OC(S)NR-

-- 45 --

substituted alkynyl, -OC(S)NR-cycloalkyl, -OC(S)NR-substituted cycloalkyl,
-OC(S)NR-aryl, -OC(S)NR-substituted aryl, -OC(S)NR-heteroaryl,
-OC(S)NR-substituted heteroaryl, -OC(S)NR-heterocyclic, and
-OC(S)NR-substituted heterocyclic where R is hydrogen or alkyl, or where
5 each R is joined to form, together with the nitrogen atom, a heterocyclic or
substituted heterocyclic ring and wherein alkyl, substituted alkyl, alkenyl,
substituted alkenyl, alkynyl, substituted alkynyl, cycloalkyl, substituted
cycloalkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl,
heterocyclic and substituted heterocyclic are as defined herein.

10

"Aminocarbonylamino" refers to the groups -NRC(O)NRR,
-NRC(O)NR-alkyl, -NRC(O)NR-substituted alkyl, -NRC(O)NR-alkenyl,
-NRC(O)NR-substituted alkenyl, -NRC(O)NR-alkynyl,
-NRC(O)NR-substituted alkynyl, -NRC(O)NR-aryl, -NRC(O)NR-substituted
15 aryl, -NRC(O)NR-cycloalkyl, -NRC(O)NR-substituted cycloalkyl, -
NRC(O)NR-heteroaryl, and -NRC(O)NR-substituted heteroaryl, -
NRC(O)NR-heterocyclic, and -NRC(O)NR-substituted heterocyclic where
each R is independently hydrogen or alkyl, or where each R is joined to
form, together with the nitrogen atom, a heterocyclic or substituted
20 heterocyclic ring, as well as where one of the amino groups is blocked by
conventional blocking groups such as Boc, Cbz, formyl, and the like, and
wherein alkyl, substituted alkyl, alkenyl, substituted alkenyl, alkynyl,
substituted alkynyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, aryl, substituted aryl,
heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic and substituted heterocyclic
25 are as defined herein.

"Aminothiocarbonylamino" refers to the groups -NRC(S)NRR,
-NRC(S)NR-alkyl, -NRC(S)NR-substituted alkyl, -NRC(S)NR-alkenyl,
-NRC(S)NR-substituted alkenyl, -NRC(S)NR-alkynyl, -NRC(S)NR-
30 substituted alkynyl, -NRC(S)NR-aryl, -NRC(S)NR-substituted aryl,

-- 46 --

-NRC(S)NR-cycloalkyl, -NRC(S)NR-substituted cycloalkyl, -NRC(S)NR-heteroaryl, and -NRC(S)NR-substituted heteroaryl, -NRC(S)NR-heterocyclic, and -NRC(S)NR-substituted heterocyclic where each R is independently hydrogen or alkyl, or where each R is joined to form, together
5 with the nitrogen atom, a heterocyclic or substituted heterocyclic ring, as well as where one of the amino groups is blocked by conventional blocking groups such as Boc, Cbz, formyl, and the like, and wherein alkyl, substituted alkyl, alkenyl, substituted alkenyl, alkynyl, substituted alkynyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl,
10 substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic and substituted heterocyclic are as defined herein.

"Aryl" or "Ar" refers to an unsaturated aromatic carbocyclic group of from 6 to 14 carbon atoms having a single ring (e.g., phenyl) or multiple
15 condensed rings (e.g., naphthyl or anthryl) which condensed rings may or may not be aromatic (e.g., 2-benzoxazolinone, 2H-1,4-benzoxazin-3(4H)-one-7yl, and the like). Preferred aryls include phenyl and naphthyl.

Substituted aryl refers to aryl groups which are substituted with from
20 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of hydroxy, acyl, acylamino, thiocarbonylamino, acyloxy, alkyl, substituted alkyl, alkoxy, substituted alkoxy, alkenyl, substituted alkenyl, alkynyl, substituted alkynyl, amidino, alkylamidino, thioamidino, amino, aminoacyl, aminocarbonyloxy, aminocarbonylamino, aminothiocarbonylamino, aryl, substituted aryl,
25 aryloxy, substituted aryloxy, cycloalkoxy, substituted cycloalkoxy, heteroaryloxy, substituted heteroaryloxy, heterocyclyloxy, substituted heterocyclyloxy, carboxyl, carboxylalkyl, carboxyl-substituted alkyl, carboxyl-cycloalkyl, carboxyl-substituted cycloalkyl, carboxylaryl, carboxyl-substituted aryl, carboxylheteroaryl, carboxyl-substituted heteroaryl,
30 carboxylheterocyclic, carboxyl-substituted heterocyclic, carboxylamido,

cyano, thiol, thioalkyl, substituted thioalkyl, thioaryl, substituted thioaryl,
 thioheteroaryl, substituted thioheteroaryl, thiocycloalkyl, substituted
 thiocycloalkyl, thioheterocyclic, substituted thioheterocyclic, cycloalkyl,
 substituted cycloalkyl, guanidino, guanidinosulfone, halo, nitro, heteroaryl,
 5 substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic, substituted heterocyclic,
 oxycarbonylamino, oxythiocarbonylamino, $-S(O)_2$ -alkyl,
 $-S(O)_2$ -substituted alkyl, $-S(O)_2$ -cycloalkyl, $-S(O)_2$ -substituted cycloalkyl,
 $-S(O)_2$ -alkenyl, $-S(O)_2$ -substituted alkenyl, $-S(O)_2$ -aryl, $-S(O)_2$ -substituted
 aryl, $-S(O)_2$ -heteroaryl, $-S(O)_2$ -substituted heteroaryl, $-S(O)_2$ -heterocyclic,
 10 $-S(O)_2$ -substituted heterocyclic, $-OS(O)_2$ -alkyl, $-OS(O)_2$ -substituted alkyl,
 $-OS(O)_2$ -aryl, $-OS(O)_2$ -substituted aryl, $-OS(O)_2$ -heteroaryl, $-OS(O)_2$ -
 substituted heteroaryl, $-OS(O)_2$ -heterocyclic, $-OS(O)_2$ -substituted
 heterocyclic, $-OSO_2$ -NRR where R is hydrogen or alkyl, $-NRS(O)_2$ -alkyl,
 $-NRS(O)_2$ -substituted alkyl, $-NRS(O)_2$ -aryl, $-NRS(O)_2$ -substituted aryl,
 15 $-NRS(O)_2$ -heteroaryl, $-NRS(O)_2$ -substituted heteroaryl, $-NRS(O)_2$ -
 heterocyclic, $-NRS(O)_2$ -substituted heterocyclic, $-NRS(O)_2$ -NR-alkyl,
 $-NRS(O)_2$ -NR-substituted alkyl, $-NRS(O)_2$ -NR-aryl, $-NRS(O)_2$ -NR-
 substituted aryl, $-NRS(O)_2$ -NR-heteroaryl, $-NRS(O)_2$ -NR-substituted
 heteroaryl, $-NRS(O)_2$ -NR-heterocyclic, $-NRS(O)_2$ -NR-substituted
 20 heterocyclic where R is hydrogen or alkyl, mono- and di-alkylamino, mono-
 and di-(substituted alkyl)amino, mono- and di-arylamino, mono- and di-
 substituted arylamino, mono- and di-heteroarylamino, mono- and di-
 substituted heteroarylamino, mono- and di-heterocyclic amino, mono- and
 di-substituted heterocyclic amino, unsymmetric di-substituted amines having
 25 different substituents selected from alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, substituted
 aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic and substituted
 heterocyclic and amino groups on the substituted aryl blocked by
 conventional blocking groups such as Boc, Cbz, formyl, and the like or
 substituted with $-SO_2$ NRR where R is hydrogen or alkyl.

"Aryloxy" refers to the group aryl-O- which includes, by way of example, phenoxy, naphthoxy, and the like.

"Substituted aryloxy" refers to substituted aryl-O- groups.

5

"Aryloxyaryl" refers to the group -aryl-O-aryl.

"Substituted aryloxyaryl" refers to aryloxyaryl groups substituted with from 1 to 3 substituents on either or both aryl rings selected from the group consisting of hydroxy, acyl, acylamino, thiocarbonylamino, acyloxy, alkyl, substituted alkyl, alkoxy, substituted alkoxy, alkenyl, substituted alkenyl, alkynyl, substituted alkynyl, amidino, alkylamidino, thioamidino, amino, aminoacyl, aminocarbonyloxy, aminocarbonylamino, aminothiocabonylamino, aryl, substituted aryl, aryloxy, substituted aryloxy, cycloalkoxy, substituted cycloalkoxy, heteroaryloxy, substituted heteroaryloxy, heterocyclyloxy, substituted heterocyclyloxy, carboxyl, carboxylalkyl, carboxyl-substituted alkyl, carboxyl-cycloalkyl, carboxyl-substituted cycloalkyl, carboxylaryl, carboxyl-substituted aryl, carboxylheteroaryl, carboxyl-substituted heteroaryl, carboxylheterocyclic, carboxyl-substituted heterocyclic, carboxylamido, cyano, thiol, thioalkyl, substituted thioalkyl, thioaryl, substituted thioaryl, thioheteroaryl, substituted thioheteroaryl, thiocycloalkyl, substituted thiocycloalkyl, thioheterocyclic, substituted thioheterocyclic, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, guanidino, guanidinosulfone, halo, nitro, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic, substituted heterocyclic, oxycarbonylamino, oxythiocarbonylamino, -S(O)₂-alkyl, -S(O)₂-substituted alkyl, -S(O)₂-cycloalkyl, -S(O)₂-substituted cycloalkyl, -S(O)₂-alkenyl, -S(O)₂-substituted alkenyl, -S(O)₂-aryl, -S(O)₂-substituted aryl, -S(O)₂-heteroaryl, -S(O)₂-substituted heteroaryl, -S(O)₂-heterocyclic, -S(O)₂-substituted heterocyclic, -OS(O)₂-alkyl, -OS(O)₂-substituted alkyl, -OS(O)₂-aryl, -OS(O)₂-substituted

aryl, -OS(O)₂-heteroaryl, -OS(O)₂-substituted heteroaryl, -OS(O)₂-
 heterocyclic, -OS(O)₂-substituted heterocyclic, -OSO₂-NRR where R is
 hydrogen or alkyl, -NRS(O)₂-alkyl, -NRS(O)₂-substituted alkyl, -NRS(O)₂-
 aryl, -NRS(O)₂-substituted aryl, -NRS(O)₂-heteroaryl, -NRS(O)₂-substituted
 5 heteroaryl, -NRS(O)₂-heterocyclic, -NRS(O)₂-substituted heterocyclic,
 -NRS(O)₂-NR-alkyl, -NRS(O)₂-NR-substituted alkyl, -NRS(O)₂-NR-aryl,
 -NRS(O)₂-NR-substituted aryl, -NRS(O)₂-NR-heteroaryl, -NRS(O)₂-NR-
 substituted heteroaryl, -NRS(O)₂-NR-heterocyclic, -NRS(O)₂-NR-substituted
 heterocyclic where R is hydrogen or alkyl, mono- and di-alkylamino, mono-
 10 and di-(substituted alkyl)amino, mono- and di-arylamino, mono- and di-
 substituted arylamino, mono- and di-heteroarylamino, mono- and di-
 substituted heteroarylamino, mono- and di-heterocyclic amino, mono- and
 di-substituted heterocyclic amino, unsymmetric di-substituted amines having
 different substituents selected from alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, substituted
 15 aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic and substituted
 heterocyclic and amino groups on the substituted aryl blocked by
 conventional blocking groups such as Boc, Cbz, formyl, and the like or
 substituted with -SO₂NRR where R is hydrogen or alkyl.

20 "Cycloalkyl" refers to cyclic alkyl groups of from 3 to 8 carbon
 atoms having a single cyclic ring including, by way of example, cyclopropyl,
 cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclooctyl and the like. Excluded from this
 definition are multi-ring alkyl groups such as adamantanyl, etc.

25 "Cycloalkenyl" refers to cyclic alkenyl groups of from 3 to 8 carbon
 atoms having single or multiple unsaturation but which are not aromatic.

"Substituted cycloalkyl" and "substituted cycloalkenyl" refer to a
 cycloalkyl and cycloalkenyl groups, preferably of from 3 to 8 carbon atoms,
 30 having from 1 to 5 substituents selected from the group consisting of oxo

-- 50 --

(=O), thioxo (=S), alkoxy, substituted alkoxy, acyl, acylamino, thiocarbonylamino, acyloxy, amino, amidino, alkylamidino, thioamidino, aminoacyl, aminocarbonylamino, aminothiocarbonylamino, aminocarbonyloxy, aryl, substituted aryl, aryloxy, substituted aryloxy, aryloxyaryl, substituted aryloxyaryl, halogen, hydroxyl, cyano, nitro, carboxyl, carboxylalkyl, carboxyl-substituted alkyl, carboxyl-cycloalkyl, carboxyl-substituted cycloalkyl, carboxylaryl, carboxyl-substituted aryl, carboxylheteroaryl, carboxyl-substituted heteroaryl, carboxylheterocyclic, carboxyl-substituted heterocyclic, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, guanidino, guanidinosulfone, thiol, thioalkyl, substituted thioalkyl, thioaryl, substituted thioaryl, thiocycloalkyl, substituted thiocycloalkyl, thioheteroaryl, substituted thioheteroaryl, thioheterocyclic, substituted thioheterocyclic, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic, substituted heterocyclic, cycloalkoxy, substituted cycloalkoxy, heteroaryloxy, substituted heteroaryloxy, heterocyclyloxy, substituted heterocyclyloxy, oxycarbonylamino, oxythiocarbonylamino, -OS(O)₂-alkyl, -OS(O)₂-substituted alkyl, -OS(O)₂-aryl, -OS(O)₂-substituted aryl, -OS(O)₂-heteroaryl, -OS(O)₂-substituted heteroaryl, -OS(O)₂-heterocyclic, -OS(O)₂-substituted heterocyclic, -OSO₂-NRR where R is hydrogen or alkyl, -NRS(O)₂-alkyl, -NRS(O)₂-substituted alkyl, -NRS(O)₂-aryl, -NRS(O)₂-substituted aryl, -NRS(O)₂-heteroaryl, -NRS(O)₂-substituted heteroaryl, -NRS(O)₂-heterocyclic, -NRS(O)₂-substituted heterocyclic, -NRS(O)₂-NR-alkyl, -NRS(O)₂-NR-substituted alkyl, -NRS(O)₂-NR-aryl, -NRS(O)₂-NR-substituted aryl, -NRS(O)₂-NR-heteroaryl, -NRS(O)₂-NR-substituted heteroaryl, -NRS(O)₂-NR-heterocyclic, -NRS(O)₂-NR-substituted heterocyclic where R is hydrogen or alkyl, mono- and di-alkylamino, mono- and di-(substituted alkyl)amino, mono- and di-arylamino, mono- and di-substituted arylamino, mono- and di-heteroarylamino, mono- and di-substituted heteroarylamino, mono- and di-heterocyclic amino, mono- and di-substituted heterocyclic amino, unsymmetric di-substituted amines having

-- 51 --

different substituents selected from alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic and substituted heterocyclic and substituted alkynyl groups having amino groups blocked by conventional blocking groups such as Boc, Cbz, formyl, and the like or

5 alkynyl/substituted alkynyl groups substituted with -SO₂-alkyl, -SO₂-substituted alkyl, -SO₂-alkenyl, -SO₂-substituted alkenyl, -SO₂-cycloalkyl, -SO₂-substituted cycloalkyl, -SO₂-aryl, -SO₂-substituted aryl, -SO₂-heteroaryl, -SO₂-substituted heteroaryl, -SO₂-heterocyclic, -SO₂-substituted heterocyclic and -SO₂NRR where R is hydrogen or alkyl.

10

"Cycloalkoxy" refers to -O-cycloalkyl groups.

"Substituted cycloalkoxy" refers to -O-substituted cycloalkyl groups.

15

"Guanidino" refers to the groups -NRC(=NR)NRR, -NRC(=NR)NR-alkyl, -NRC(=NR)NR-substituted alkyl, -NRC(=NR)NR-alkenyl, -NRC(=NR)NR-substituted alkenyl, -NRC(=NR)NR-alkynyl, -NRC(=NR)NR-substituted alkynyl, -NRC(=NR)NR-aryl, -NRC(=NR)NR-substituted aryl, -NRC(=NR)NR-cycloalkyl,

20 -NRC(=NR)NR-heteroaryl, -NRC(=NR)NR-substituted heteroaryl, -NRC(=NR)NR-heterocyclic, and -NRC(=NR)NR-substituted heterocyclic where each R is independently hydrogen and alkyl as well as where one of the amino groups is blocked by conventional blocking groups such as Boc, Cbz, formyl, and the like and wherein alkyl, substituted alkyl, alkenyl,

25 substituted alkenyl, alkynyl, substituted alkynyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic and substituted heterocyclic are as defined herein.

30

"Guanidinosulfone" refers to the groups -NRC(=NR)NRSO₂-alkyl, -NRC(=NR)NRSO₂-substituted alkyl, -NRC(=NR)NRSO₂-alkenyl,

-- 52 --

-NRC(=NR)NRSO₂-substituted alkenyl, -NRC(=NR)NRSO₂-alkynyl,
 -NRC(=NR)NRSO₂-substituted alkynyl, -NRC(=NR)NRSO₂-aryl,
 -NRC(=NR)NRSO₂-substituted aryl, -NRC(=NR)NRSO₂-cycloalkyl,
 -NRC(=NR)NRSO₂-substituted cycloalkyl, -NRC(=NR)NRSO₂-heteroaryl,
 5 and -NRC(=NR)NRSO₂-substituted heteroaryl, -NRC(=NR)NRSO₂-
 heterocyclic, and -NRC(=NR)NRSO₂-substituted heterocyclic where each R
 is independently hydrogen and alkyl and wherein alkyl, substituted alkyl,
 alkenyl, substituted alkenyl, alkynyl, substituted alkynyl, cycloalkyl,
 substituted cycloalkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted
 10 heteroaryl, heterocyclic and substituted heterocyclic are as defined herein.

"Halo" or "halogen" refers to fluoro, chloro, bromo and iodo and preferably is either chloro or bromo.

15 "Heteroaryl" refers to an aromatic carbocyclic group of from 2 to 10
 carbon atoms and 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from oxygen, nitrogen and
 sulfur within the ring. Such heteroaryl groups can have a single ring (e.g.,
 pyridyl or furyl) or multiple condensed rings (e.g., indolizinyll or
 benzothienyl). Preferred heteroaryls include pyridyl, pyrrolyl, indolyl and
 20 furyl.

"Substituted heteroaryl" refers to heteroaryl groups which are
 substituted with from 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting
 of hydroxy, acyl, acylamino, thiocarbonylamino, acyloxy, alkyl, substituted
 25 alkyl, alkoxy, substituted alkoxy, alkenyl, substituted alkenyl, alkynyl,
 substituted alkynyl, amidino, alkylamidino, thioamidino, amino, aminoacyl,
 aminocarbonyloxy, aminocarbonylamino, aminothiocarbonylamino, aryl,
 substituted aryl, aryloxy, substituted aryloxy, cycloalkoxy, substituted
 cycloalkoxy, heteroaryloxy, substituted heteroaryloxy, heterocyclyloxy,
 30 substituted heterocyclyloxy, carboxyl, carboxylalkyl, carboxyl-substituted

alkyl, carboxyl-cycloalkyl, carboxyl-substituted cycloalkyl, carboxylaryl,
 carboxyl-substituted aryl, carboxylheteroaryl, carboxyl-substituted
 heteroaryl, carboxylheterocyclic, carboxyl-substituted heterocyclic,
 carboxylamido, cyano, thiol, thioalkyl, substituted thioalkyl, thioaryl,
 5 substituted thioaryl, thioheteroaryl, substituted thioheteroaryl,
 thiocycloalkyl, substituted thiocycloalkyl, thioheterocyclic, substituted
 thioheterocyclic, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, guanidino,
 guanidinosulfone, halo, nitro, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl,
 heterocyclic, substituted heterocyclic, oxycarbonylamino,
 10 oxythiocarbonylamino, $-S(O)_2$ -alkyl, $-S(O)_2$ -substituted alkyl, $-S(O)_2$ -
 cycloalkyl, $-S(O)_2$ -substituted cycloalkyl, $-S(O)_2$ -alkenyl, $-S(O)_2$ -substituted
 alkenyl, $-S(O)_2$ -aryl, $-S(O)_2$ -substituted aryl, $-S(O)_2$ -heteroaryl, $-S(O)_2$ -
 substituted heteroaryl, $-S(O)_2$ -heterocyclic, $-S(O)_2$ -substituted heterocyclic,
 15 $-OS(O)_2$ -alkyl, $-OS(O)_2$ -substituted alkyl, $-OS(O)_2$ -aryl, $-OS(O)_2$ -substituted
 aryl, $-OS(O)_2$ -heteroaryl, $-OS(O)_2$ -substituted heteroaryl, $-OS(O)_2$ -
 heterocyclic, $-OS(O)_2$ -substituted heterocyclic, $-OSO_2$ -NRR where R is
 hydrogen or alkyl, $-NRS(O)_2$ -alkyl, $-NRS(O)_2$ -substituted alkyl, $-NRS(O)_2$ -
 aryl, $-NRS(O)_2$ -substituted aryl, $-NRS(O)_2$ -heteroaryl, $-NRS(O)_2$ -substituted
 heteroaryl, $-NRS(O)_2$ -heterocyclic, $-NRS(O)_2$ -substituted heterocyclic,
 20 $-NRS(O)_2$ -NR-alkyl, $-NRS(O)_2$ -NR-substituted alkyl, $-NRS(O)_2$ -NR-aryl,
 $-NRS(O)_2$ -NR-substituted aryl, $-NRS(O)_2$ -NR-heteroaryl, $-NRS(O)_2$ -NR-
 substituted heteroaryl, $-NRS(O)_2$ -NR-heterocyclic, $-NRS(O)_2$ -NR-substituted
 heterocyclic where R is hydrogen or alkyl, mono- and di-alkylamino, mono-
 and di-(substituted alkyl)amino, mono- and di-arylamino, mono- and di-
 25 substituted arylamino, mono- and di-heteroarylamino, mono- and di-
 substituted heteroarylamino, mono- and di-heterocyclic amino, mono- and
 di-substituted heterocyclic amino, unsymmetric di-substituted amines having
 different substituents selected from alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, substituted
 aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic and substituted
 30 heterocyclic and amino groups on the substituted aryl blocked by

-- 54 --

conventional blocking groups such as Boc, Cbz, formyl, and the like or substituted with -SO₂NRR where R is hydrogen or alkyl.

"Heteroaryloxy" refers to the group -O-heteroaryl and "substituted heteroaryloxy" refers to the group -O-substituted heteroaryl.

"Heterocycle" or "heterocyclic" refers to a saturated or unsaturated group having a single ring or multiple condensed rings, from 1 to 10 carbon atoms and from 1 to 4 hetero atoms selected from nitrogen, sulfur or oxygen within the ring wherein, in fused ring systems, one or more the rings can be aryl or heteroaryl.

"Saturated heterocyclic" refers to heterocycles of single or multiple condensed rings lacking unsaturation in any ring (e.g., carbon to carbon unsaturation, carbon to nitrogen unsaturation, nitrogen to nitrogen unsaturation, and the like).

"Unsaturated heterocyclic" refers to non-aromatic heterocycles of single or multiple condensed rings having unsaturation in any ring (e.g., carbon to carbon unsaturation, carbon to nitrogen unsaturation, nitrogen to nitrogen unsaturation, and the like).

"Substituted heterocyclic" refers to heterocycle groups which are substituted with from 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of oxo (=O), thioxo (=S), alkoxy, substituted alkoxy, acyl, acylamino, thiocarbonylamino, acyloxy, amino, amidino, alkylamidino, thioamidino, aminoacyl, aminocarbonylamino, aminothiocarbonylamino, aminocarbonyloxy, aryl, substituted aryl, aryloxy, substituted aryloxy, aryloxyaryl, substituted aryloxyaryl, halogen, hydroxyl, cyano, nitro, carboxyl, carboxylalkyl, carboxyl-substituted alkyl, carboxyl-cycloalkyl,

-- 55 --

carboxyl-substituted cycloalkyl, carboxylaryl, carboxyl-substituted aryl,
 carboxylheteroaryl, carboxyl-substituted heteroaryl, carboxylheterocyclic,
 carboxyl-substituted heterocyclic, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl,
 guanidino, guanidinosulfone, thiol, thioalkyl, substituted thioalkyl, thioaryl,
 5 substituted thioaryl, thiocycloalkyl, substituted thiocycloalkyl,
 thioheteroaryl, substituted thioheteroaryl, thioheterocyclic, substituted
 thioheterocyclic, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic, substituted
 heterocyclic, cycloalkoxy, substituted cycloalkoxy, heteroaryloxy,
 substituted heteroaryloxy, heterocyclyloxy, substituted heterocyclyloxy,
 10 oxycarbonylamino, oxythiocarbonylamino, $-\text{OS}(\text{O})_2\text{-alkyl}$, $-\text{OS}(\text{O})_2\text{-}$
 substituted alkyl , $-\text{OS}(\text{O})_2\text{-aryl}$, $-\text{OS}(\text{O})_2\text{-substituted aryl}$, $-\text{OS}(\text{O})_2\text{-heteroaryl}$,
 $-\text{OS}(\text{O})_2\text{-substituted heteroaryl}$, $-\text{OS}(\text{O})_2\text{-heterocyclic}$, $-\text{OS}(\text{O})_2\text{-substituted}$
 heterocyclic , $-\text{OSO}_2\text{-NRR}$ where R is hydrogen or alkyl,
 $-\text{NRS}(\text{O})_2\text{-alkyl}$, $-\text{NRS}(\text{O})_2\text{-substituted alkyl}$, $-\text{NRS}(\text{O})_2\text{-aryl}$, $-\text{NRS}(\text{O})_2\text{-}$
 15 substituted aryl , $-\text{NRS}(\text{O})_2\text{-heteroaryl}$, $-\text{NRS}(\text{O})_2\text{-substituted heteroaryl}$,
 $-\text{NRS}(\text{O})_2\text{-heterocyclic}$, $-\text{NRS}(\text{O})_2\text{-substituted heterocyclic}$,
 $-\text{NRS}(\text{O})_2\text{-NR-alkyl}$, $-\text{NRS}(\text{O})_2\text{-NR-substituted alkyl}$, $-\text{NRS}(\text{O})_2\text{-NR-aryl}$,
 $-\text{NRS}(\text{O})_2\text{-NR-substituted aryl}$, $-\text{NRS}(\text{O})_2\text{-NR-heteroaryl}$, $-\text{NRS}(\text{O})_2\text{-NR-}$
 $\text{substituted heteroaryl}$, $-\text{NRS}(\text{O})_2\text{-NR-heterocyclic}$, $-\text{NRS}(\text{O})_2\text{-NR-substituted}$
 20 heterocyclic where R is hydrogen or alkyl, mono- and di-alkylamino, mono-
 and di-(substituted alkyl)amino, mono- and di-arylamino, mono- and di-
 substituted arylamino, mono- and di-heteroarylamino, mono- and di-
 substituted heteroarylamino, mono- and di-heterocyclic amino, mono- and
 di-substituted heterocyclic amino, unsymmetric di-substituted amines having
 25 different substituents selected from alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, substituted
 aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic and substituted
 heterocyclic and substituted alkynyl groups having amino groups blocked by
 conventional blocking groups such as Boc, Cbz, formyl, and the like or
 alkynyl/substituted alkynyl groups substituted with $-\text{SO}_2\text{-alkyl}$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{-}$
 30 substituted alkyl , $-\text{SO}_2\text{-alkenyl}$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{-substituted alkenyl}$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{-cycloalkyl}$,

-- 56 --

-SO₂-substituted cycloalkyl, -SO₂-aryl, -SO₂-substituted aryl, -SO₂-heteroaryl, -SO₂-substituted heteroaryl, -SO₂-heterocyclic, -SO₂-substituted heterocyclic and -SO₂NRR where R is hydrogen or alkyl.

5 Examples of heterocycles and heteroaryls include, but are not limited to, azetidine, pyrrole, imidazole, pyrazole, pyridine, pyrazine, pyrimidine, pyridazine, indolizine, isoindole, indole, dihydroindole, indazole, purine, quinolizine, isoquinoline, quinoline, phthalazine, naphthylpyridine, quinoxaline, quinazoline, cinnoline, pteridine, carbazole, carboline,
10 phenanthridine, acridine, phenanthroline, isothiazole, phenazine, isoxazole, phenoxazine, phenothiazine, imidazolidine, imidazoline, piperidine, piperazine, indoline, phthalimide, 1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinoline, 4,5,6,7-tetrahydrobenzo[b]thiophene, thiazole, thiazolidine, thiophene, benzo[b]thiophene, morpholino, thiomorpholino, piperidinyl, pyrrolidine,
15 tetrahydrofuranyl, and the like.

"Saturated substituted heterocyclic" refers to substituted heterocycles of single or multiple condensed rings lacking unsaturation in any ring (e.g., carbon to carbon unsaturation, carbon to nitrogen unsaturation, nitrogen to
20 nitrogen unsaturation, and the like).

"Unsaturated substituted heterocyclic" refers to non-aromatic substituted heterocycles of single or multiple condensed rings having unsaturation in any ring (e.g., carbon to carbon unsaturation, carbon to
25 nitrogen unsaturation, nitrogen to nitrogen unsaturation, and the like).

"Heterocyclyloxy" refers to the group -O-heterocyclic and "substituted heterocyclyloxy" refers to the group -O-substituted heterocyclic.

30 "Thiol" refers to the group -SH.

-- 57 --

"Thioalkyl" refers to the groups -S-alkyl

"Substituted thioalkyl" refers to the group -S-substituted alkyl.

5 "Thiocycloalkyl" refers to the groups -S-cycloalkyl.

"Substituted thiocycloalkyl" refers to the group -S-substituted cycloalkyl.

10 "Thioaryl" refers to the group -S-aryl and "substituted thioaryl" refers to the group -S-substituted aryl.

"Thioheteroaryl" refers to the group -S-heteroaryl and "substituted thioheteroaryl" refers to the group -S-substituted heteroaryl.

15

"Thioheterocyclic" refers to the group -S-heterocyclic and "substituted thioheterocyclic" refers to the group -S-substituted heterocyclic.

20 "Pharmaceutically acceptable salt" refers to pharmaceutically acceptable salts of a compound of Formula I which salts are derived from a variety of organic and inorganic counter ions well known in the art and include, by way of example only, sodium, potassium, calcium, magnesium, ammonium, tetraalkylammonium, and the like; and when the molecule contains a basic functionality, salts of organic or inorganic acids, such as
25 hydrochloride, hydrobromide, tartrate, mesylate, acetate, maleate, oxalate and the like.

-- 58 --

Compound Preparation

The compounds of this invention can be prepared from readily available starting materials using the following general methods and procedures. It will be appreciated that where typical or preferred process conditions (i.e., reaction temperatures, times, mole ratios of reactants, solvents, pressures, etc.) are given, other process conditions can also be used unless otherwise stated. Optimum reaction conditions may vary with the particular reactants or solvent used, but such conditions can be determined by one skilled in the art by routine optimization procedures.

10

Additionally, as will be apparent to those skilled in the art, conventional protecting groups may be necessary to prevent certain functional groups from undergoing undesired reactions. Suitable protecting groups for various functional groups as well as suitable conditions for protecting and deprotecting particular functional groups are well known in the art. For example, numerous protecting groups are described in T. W. Greene and G. M. Wuts, *Protecting Groups in Organic Synthesis*, Second Edition, Wiley, New York, 1991, and references cited therein.

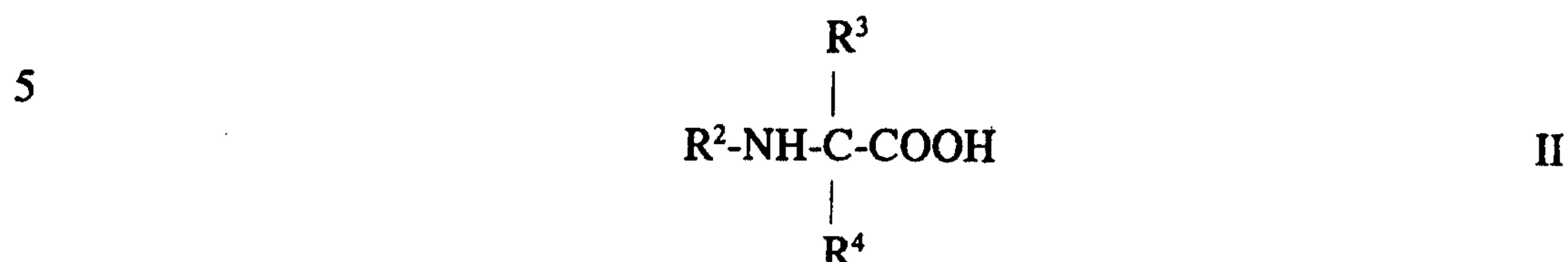
15

Furthermore, the compounds of this invention will typically contain one or more chiral centers. Accordingly, if desired, such compounds can be prepared or isolated as pure stereoisomers, i.e., as individual enantiomers or diastereomers, or as stereoisomer-enriched mixtures. All such stereoisomers (and enriched mixtures) are included within the scope of this invention, unless otherwise indicated. Pure stereoisomers (or enriched mixtures) may be prepared using, for example, optically active starting materials or stereoselective reagents well-known in the art. Alternatively, racemic mixtures of such compounds can be separated using, for example, chiral column chromatography, chiral resolving agents and the like.

25

30

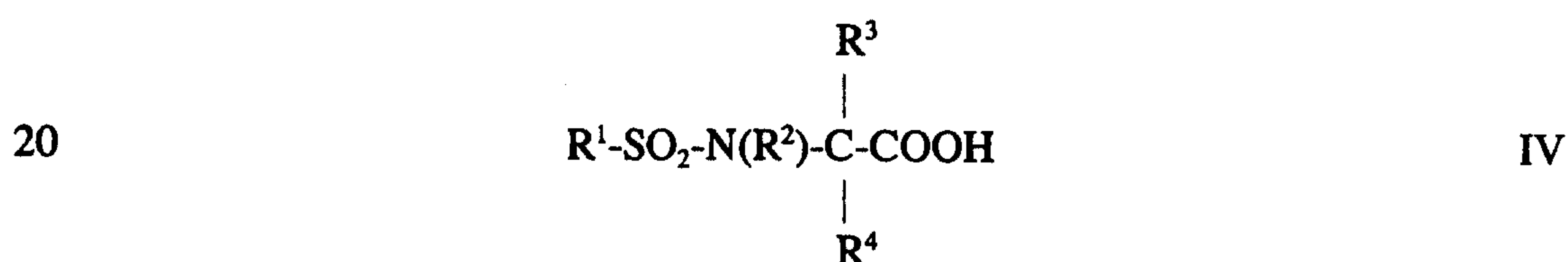
In a preferred method of synthesis, the compounds of formula I and IA wherein Q is -C(O)NR⁷- are prepared by first coupling an amino acid of formula II:



10 wherein R² and R³ are as defined herein, and R⁴ is a hydrogen, with a sulfonyl chloride of formula III:



15 wherein R¹ is as defined herein, to provide an *N*-sulfonyl amino acid of formula IV:



wherein R¹-R⁴ are as defined herein.

25

This reaction is typically conducted by contacting the amino acid of formula II with at least one equivalent, preferably about 1.1 to about 2 equivalents, of sulfonyl chloride III in an inert diluent such as dichloromethane and the like. Generally, the reaction is conducted at a temperature ranging from about -70°C to about 40°C for about 1 to about 24 hours. Preferably, this reaction is conducted in the presence of a suitable base to scavenge the acid generated during the reaction. Suitable bases include, by way of example, tertiary amines, such as triethylamine,

30

-- 60 --

diisopropylethylamine, *N*-methylmorpholine and the like. Alternatively, the reaction can be conducted under Schotten-Baumann-type conditions using aqueous alkali, such as sodium hydroxide and the like, as the base. Upon completion of the reaction, the resulting *N*-sulfonyl amino acid IV is
5 recovered by conventional methods including neutralization, extraction, precipitation, chromatography, filtration, and the like.

The amino acids of formula II employed in the above reaction are either known compounds or compounds that can be prepared from known
10 compounds by conventional synthetic procedures. Examples of suitable amino acids for use in this reaction include, but are not limited to, L-proline, *trans*-4-hydroxyl-L-proline, *cis*-4-hydroxyl-L-proline, *trans*-3-phenyl-L-proline, *cis*-3-phenyl-L-proline, L-(2-methyl)proline, L-pipecolinic acid, L-azetidine-2-carboxylic acid, L-indoline-2-carboxylic acid, L-1,2,3,4-
15 tetrahydroisoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, L-thiazolidine-4-carboxylic acid, L-(5,5-dimethyl)thiazolidine-4-carboxylic acid, L-thiamorpholine-3-carboxylic acid, glycine, 2-*tert*-butylglycine, D,L-phenylglycine, L-alanine, α -methylalanine, *N*-methyl-L-phenylalanine, L-diphenylalanine, sarcosine, D,L-phenylsarcosine, L-aspartic acid β -*tert*-butyl ester, L-glutamic acid
20 γ -*tert*-butyl ester, L-(*O*-benzyl)serine, 1-aminocyclopropanecarboxylic acid, 1-aminocyclobutanecarboxylic acid, 1-aminocyclopentanecarboxylic acid (cycloleucine) 1-aminocyclohexane-carboxylic acid, L-serine and the like. If desired, the corresponding carboxylic acid esters of the amino acids of formula II, such as the methyl esters, ethyl esters and the like, can be
25 employed in the above reaction with the sulfonyl chloride III. Subsequent hydrolysis of the ester group to the carboxylic acid using conventional reagents and conditions, i.e., treatment with an alkali metal hydroxide in an inert diluent such as methanol/water, then provides the *N*-sulfonyl amino acid IV.

-- 61 --

Similarly, the sulfonyl chlorides of formula III employed in the above reaction are either known compounds or compounds that can be prepared from known compounds by conventional synthetic procedures. Such compounds are typically prepared from the corresponding sulfonic acid, i.e., from compounds of the formula R^1-SO_3H where R^1 is as defined above, using phosphorous trichloride and phosphorous pentachloride. This reaction is generally conducted by contacting the sulfonic acid with about 2 to 5 molar equivalents of phosphorous trichloride and phosphorous pentachloride, either neat or in an inert solvent, such as dichloromethane, at a temperature in the range of about 0°C to about 80°C for about 1 to about 48 hours to afford the sulfonyl chloride. Alternatively, the sulfonyl chlorides of formula III can be prepared from the corresponding thiol compound, i.e., from compounds of the formula R^1-SH where R^1 is as defined above, by treating the thiol with chlorine (Cl_2) and water under conventional reaction conditions.

Examples of sulfonyl chlorides suitable for use in this invention include, but are not limited to, methanesulfonyl chloride, 2-propanesulfonyl chloride, 1-butanesulfonyl chloride, benzenesulfonyl chloride, 1-naphthalenesulfonyl chloride, 2-naphthalenesulfonyl chloride, *p*-toluenesulfonyl chloride, α -toluenesulfonyl chloride, 4-acetamidobenzenesulfonyl chloride, 4-amidinobenzenesulfonyl chloride, 4-*tert*-butylbenzenesulfonyl chloride, 4-bromobenzenesulfonyl chloride, 2-carboxybenzenesulfonyl chloride, 4-cyanobenzenesulfonyl chloride, 3,4-dichlorobenzenesulfonyl chloride, 3,5-dichlorobenzenesulfonyl chloride, 3,4-dimethoxybenzenesulfonyl chloride, 3,5-ditrifluoromethylbenzenesulfonyl chloride, 4-fluorobenzenesulfonyl chloride, 4-methoxybenzenesulfonyl chloride, 2-methoxycarbonylbenzenesulfonyl chloride, 4-methylamidobenzenesulfonyl chloride, 4-nitrobenzenesulfonyl chloride, 4-thioamidobenzenesulfonyl chloride, 4-trifluoromethyl-

-- 62 --

benzenesulfonyl chloride, 4-trifluoromethoxybenzenesulfonyl chloride,
 2,4,6-trimethylbenzenesulfonyl chloride, 2-phenylethanesulfonyl chloride,
 2-thiophenesulfonyl chloride, 5-chloro-2-thiophenesulfonyl chloride,
 2,5-dichloro-4-thiophenesulfonyl chloride, 2-thiazolesulfonyl chloride,
 5 2-methyl-4-thiazolesulfonyl chloride, 1-methyl-4-imidazolesulfonyl chloride,
 1-methyl-4-pyrazolesulfonyl chloride, 5-chloro-1,3-dimethyl-
 4-pyrazolesulfonyl chloride, 3-pyridinesulfonyl chloride,
 2-pyrimidinesulfonyl chloride, and the like. If desired, a sulfonyl fluoride,
 sulfonyl bromide or sulfonic acid anhydride may be used in place of the
 10 sulfonyl chloride in the above reaction to form the *N*-sulfonyl amino acids of
 formula IV.

The intermediate *N*-sulfonyl amino acids of formula IV can also be
 prepared by reacting a sulfonamide of formula V:

15

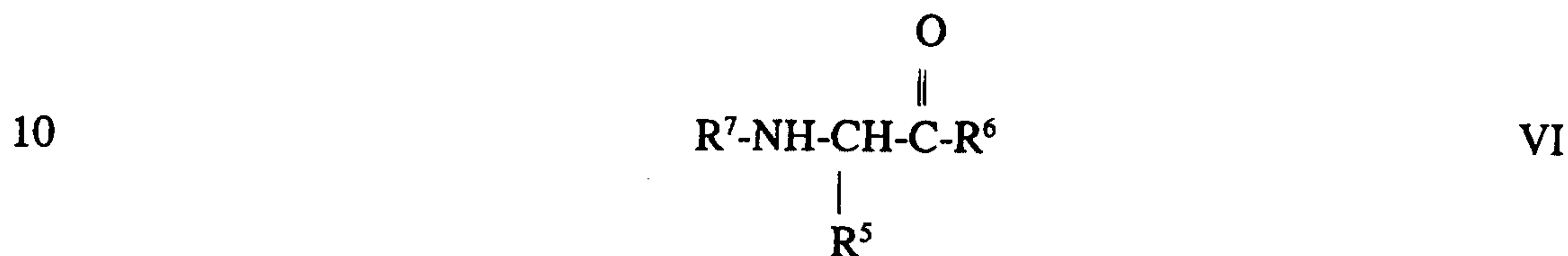


wherein R^1 and R^2 are as defined above, with a carboxylic acid derivative of
 the formula $\text{L(R}^3\text{)CHCOOR}$ where L is a leaving group, such as chloro,
 20 bromo, iodo, mesylate, tosylate and the like, R^3 is as defined above and R is
 hydrogen or an alkyl group. This reaction is typically conducted by
 contacting the sulfonamide V with at least one equivalent, preferably 1.1 to 2
 equivalents, of the carboxylic acid derivative in the presence of a suitable
 base, such as triethylamine, in an inert diluent, such as DMF, at a
 25 temperature ranging from about 24°C to about 37°C for about 0.5 to about 4
 hours. This reaction is further described in Zuckermann et al., *J. Am.*
Chem. Soc., 1992, 114, 10646-10647. Preferred carboxylic acid derivatives
 for use in this reaction are α -chloro and α -bromocarboxylic acid esters such
 as *tert*-butyl bromoacetate, and the like. When an carboxylic acid ester is

-- 63 --

employed in this reaction, the ester group is subsequently hydrolyzed using conventional procedures to afford an *N*-sulfonyl amino acid of formula IV.

The compounds of formula I are then prepared by coupling the
 5 intermediate *N*-sulfonyl amino acid of formula IV with an amino acid derivative of formula VI:



wherein $\text{R}^5\text{-R}^7$ are as defined herein. This coupling reaction is typically
 15 conducted using well-known coupling reagents such as carbodiimides, BOP reagent (benzotriazol-1-yloxy-tris(dimethylamino)phosphonium hexafluorophosphonate) and the like. Suitable carbodiimides include, by way of example, dicyclohexylcarbodiimide (DCC), 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide (EDC) and the like. If desired,
 20 polymer supported forms of carbodiimide coupling reagents may also be used including, for example, those described in *Tetrahedron Letters*, 34(48), 7685 (1993). Additionally, well-known coupling promoters, such as *N*-hydroxysuccinimide, 1-hydroxybenzotriazole and the like, may be used to facilitate the coupling reaction.

25

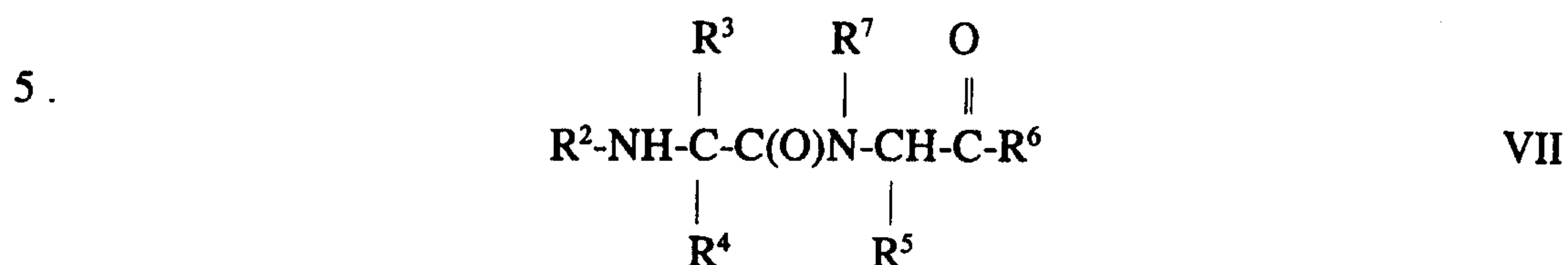
This coupling reaction is typically conducted by contacting the *N*-sulfonylamino acid IV with about 1 to about 2 equivalents of the coupling reagent and at least one equivalent, preferably about 1 to about 1.2 equivalents, of amino acid derivative VI in an inert diluent, such as
 30 dichloromethane, chloroform, acetonitrile, tetrahydrofuran, *N,N*-dimethylformamide and the like. Generally, this reaction is conducted at a temperature ranging from about 0°C to about 37°C for about 12 to about 24

hours. Upon completion of the reaction, the compound of formula I is recovered by conventional methods including neutralization, extraction, precipitation, chromatography, filtration, and the like.

5 Alternatively, the *N*-sulfonyl amino acid IV can be converted into an acid halide and the acid halide coupled with amino acid derivative VI to provide compounds of formula I. The acid halide of VI can be prepared by contacting VI with an inorganic acid halide, such as thionyl chloride, phosphorous trichloride, phosphorous tribromide or phosphorous
10 pentachloride, or preferably, with oxalyl chloride under conventional conditions. Generally, this reaction is conducted using about 1 to 5 molar equivalents of the inorganic acid halide or oxalyl chloride, either neat or in an inert solvent, such as dichloromethane or carbon tetrachloride, at a temperature in the range of about 0°C to about 80°C for about 1 to about 48
15 hours. A catalyst, such as *N,N*-dimethylformamide, may also be used in this reaction.

 The acid halide of *N*-sulfonyl amino acid IV is then contacted with at least one equivalent, preferably about 1.1 to about 1.5 equivalents, of amino
20 acid derivative VI in an inert diluent, such as dichloromethane, at a temperature ranging from about -70°C to about 40°C for about 1 to about 24 hours. Preferably, this reaction is conducted in the presence of a suitable base to scavenge the acid generated during the reaction. Suitable bases include, by way of example, tertiary amines, such as triethylamine,
25 diisopropylethylamine, *N*-methylmorpholine and the like. Alternatively, the reaction can be conducted under Schotten-Baumann-type conditions using aqueous alkali, such as sodium hydroxide and the like. Upon completion of the reaction, the compound of formula I is recovered by conventional methods including neutralization, extraction, precipitation, chromatography,
30 filtration, and the like.

Alternatively, the compounds of formula I can be prepared by first forming a diamino acid derivative of formula VII:



10 wherein R^2 - R^7 are as defined herein. The diamino acid derivatives of formula VII can be readily prepared by coupling an amino acid of formula II with an amino acid derivative of formula VI using conventional amino acid coupling techniques and reagents, such carbodiimides, BOP reagent and the like, as described above. Diamino acid VII can then be sulfonated using a
 15 sulfonyl chloride of formula III and using the synthetic procedures described above to provide a compound of formula I.

The amino acid derivatives of formula VI employed in the above reactions are either known compounds or compounds that can be prepared
 20 from known compounds by conventional synthetic procedures. For example, amino acid derivatives of formula VI can be prepared by C-alkylating commercially available diethyl 2-acetamidomalonate (Aldrich, Milwaukee, Wisconsin, USA) with an alkyl or substituted alkyl halide. This reaction is typically conducted by treating the diethyl 2-acetamidomalonate
 25 with at least one equivalent of sodium ethoxide and at least one equivalent of an alkyl or substituted alkyl halide in refluxing ethanol for about 6 to about 12 hours. The resulting C-alkylated malonate is then deacetylated, hydrolyzed and decarboxylated by heating in aqueous hydrochloric acid at reflux for about 6 to about 12 hours to provide the amino acid, typically as
 30 the hydrochloride salt.

-- 66 --

Examples of amino acid derivatives of formula VI suitable for use in the above reactions include, but are not limited to, L-4-nitrophenylalanine methyl ester, L-tyrosine methyl ester, D,L-4-nitrohomophenylalanine methyl ester, and the like. If desired, of course, other esters or amides of the
5 above-described compounds may also be employed.

For ease of synthesis, the compounds of formula I are typically prepared as an ester, i.e., where R⁶ is an alkoxy or substituted alkoxy group and the like. If desired, the ester group can be hydrolysed using
10 conventional conditions and reagents to provide the corresponding carboxylic acid. Typically, this reaction is conducted by treating the ester with at least one equivalent of an alkali metal hydroxide, such as lithium, sodium or potassium hydroxide, in an inert diluent, such as methanol or mixtures of methanol and water, at a temperature ranging from about 0°C to about 24°C
15 for about 1 to about 12 hours. Alternatively, benzyl esters may be removed by hydrogenolysis using a palladium catalyst, such as palladium on carbon. The resulting carboxylic acids may be coupled, if desired, to amines such as β-alanine ethyl ester, hydroxyamines such as hydroxylamine and *N*-hydroxysuccinimide, alkoxyamines and substituted alkoxyamines such as *O*-
20 methylhydroxylamine and *O*-benzylhydroxylamine, and the like, using conventional coupling reagents and conditions as described above.

As will be apparent to those skilled in the art, other functional groups present on any of the substituents of the compounds of formula I can be
25 readily modified or derivatized either before or after the above-described coupling reactions using well-known synthetic procedures. For example, a nitro group present on a substituent of a compound of formula I or an intermediate thereof may be readily reduced by hydrogenation in the presence of a palladium catalyst, such as palladium on carbon, to provide the
30 corresponding amino group. This reaction is typically conducted at a

-- 67 --

temperature of from about 20°C to about 50°C for about 6 to about 24 hours in an inert diluent, such as methanol. Compounds having a nitro group on the R⁵ substituent can be prepared, for example, by using a 4-nitrophenylalanine derivative and the like in the above-described coupling reactions.

Similarly, a pyridyl group can be hydrogenated in the presence of a platinum catalyst, such as platinum oxide, in an acidic diluent to provide the corresponding piperidinyll analogue. Generally, this reaction is conducted by treating the pyridine compound with hydrogen at a pressure ranging from about 20 psi to about 60 psi, preferably about 40 psi, in the presence of the catalyst at a temperature of about 20°C to about 50°C for about 2 to about 24 hours in an acidic diluent, such as a mixture of methanol and aqueous hydrochloric acid. Compounds having a pyridyl group can be readily prepared by using, for example, β -(2-pyridyl)-, β -(3-pyridyl)- or β -(4-pyridyl)-L-alanine derivatives in the above-described coupling reactions.

Additionally, when the R⁵ substituent of a compound of formula I or an intermediate thereof contains a primary or secondary amino group, such amino groups can be further derivatized either before or after the above coupling reactions to provide, by way of example, amides, sulfonamides, ureas, thioureas, carbamates, secondary or tertiary amines and the like. Compounds having a primary amino group on the R⁵ substituent may be prepared, for example, by reduction of the corresponding nitro compound as described above. Alternatively, such compounds can be prepared by using an amino acid derivative derived from lysine, 4-aminophenylalanine and the like in the above-described coupling reactions.

By way of illustration, a compound of formula I or an intermediate thereof having a substituent containing a primary or secondary amino group,

-- 68 --

such as where R⁵ is a (4-aminophenyl)methyl group, can be readily *N*-acylated using conventional acylating reagents and conditions to provide the corresponding amide. This acylation reaction is typically conducted by treating the amino compound with at least one equivalent, preferably about
5 1.1 to about 1.2 equivalents, of a carboxylic acid in the presence of a coupling reagent such as a carbodiimide, BOP reagent (benzotriazol-1-yloxy-tris(dimethylamino)phosphonium hexafluorophosphate) and the like, in an inert diluent, such as dichloromethane, chloroform, acetonitrile, tetrahydrofuran, *N,N*-dimethylformamide and the like, at a temperature
10 ranging from about 0°C to about 37°C for about 4 to about 24 hours. Preferably, a promoter, such as *N*-hydroxysuccinimide, 1-hydroxy-benzotriazole and the like, is used to facilitate the acylation reaction. Examples of carboxylic acids suitable for use in this reaction include, but are not limited to, *N*-*tert*-butyloxycarbonylglycine, *N*-*tert*-butyloxycarbonyl-L-
15 phenylalanine, *N*-*tert*-butyloxycarbonyl-L-aspartic acid benzyl ester, benzoic acid, *N*-*tert*-butyloxycarbonylisonipecotic acid, *N*-methylisonipecotic acid, *N*-*tert*-butyloxycarbonylnipecotic acid, *N*-*tert*-butyloxycarbonyl-L-tetrahydroisoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-proline and the like.

20

Alternatively, a compound of formula I or an intermediate thereof containing a primary or secondary amino group can be *N*-acylated using an acyl halide or a carboxylic acid anhydride to form the corresponding amide. This reaction is typically conducted by contacting the amino compound with
25 at least one equivalent, preferably about 1.1 to about 1.2 equivalents, of the acyl halide or carboxylic acid anhydride in an inert diluent, such as dichloromethane, at a temperature ranging from about -70°C to about 40°C for about 1 to about 24 hours. If desired, an acylation catalyst such as 4-(*N,N*-dimethylamino)pyridine may be used to promote the acylation
30 reaction. The acylation reaction is preferably conducted in the presence of a

-- 69 --

suitable base to scavenge the acid generated during the reaction. Suitable bases include, by way of example, tertiary amines, such as triethylamine, diisopropylethylamine, *N*-methylmorpholine and the like. Alternatively, the reaction can be conducted under Schotten-Baumann-type conditions using aqueous alkali, such as sodium hydroxide and the like.

Examples of acyl halides and carboxylic acid anhydrides suitable for use in this reaction include, but are not limited to, 2-methylpropionyl chloride, trimethylacetyl chloride, phenylacetyl chloride, benzoyl chloride, 2-bromobenzoyl chloride, 2-methylbenzoyl chloride, 2-trifluoromethylbenzoyl chloride, isonicotinoyl chloride, nicotinoyl chloride, picolinoyl chloride, acetic anhydride, succinic anhydride, and the like. Carbamyl chlorides, such as *N,N*-dimethylcarbamyl chloride, *N,N*-diethylcarbamyl chloride and the like, can also be used in this reaction to provide ureas. Similarly, dicarbonates, such as di-*tert*-butyl dicarbonate, may be employed to provide carbamates.

In a similar manner, a compound of formula I or an intermediate thereof containing a primary or secondary amino group may be *N*-sulfonated to form a sulfonamide using a sulfonyl halide or a sulfonic acid anhydride. Sulfonyl halides and sulfonic acid anhydrides suitable for use in this reaction include, but are not limited to, methanesulfonyl chloride, chloromethanesulfonyl chloride, *p*-toluenesulfonyl chloride, trifluoromethanesulfonic anhydride, and the like. Similarly, sulfamoyl chlorides, such as dimethylsulfamoyl chloride, can be used to provide sulfamides (e.g., >N-SO₂-N<).

Additionally, a primary and secondary amino group present on a substituent of a compound of formula I or an intermediate thereof can be reacted with an isocyanate or a thioisocyanate to give a urea or thiourea,

-- 70 --

respectively. This reaction is typically conducted by contacting the amino compound with at least one equivalent, preferably about 1.1 to about 1.2 equivalents, of the isocyanate or thioisocyanate in an inert diluent, such as toluene and the like, at a temperature ranging from about 24°C to about 37°C for about 12 to about 24 hours. The isocyanates and thioisocyanates used in this reaction are commercially available or can be prepared from commercially available compounds using well-known synthetic procedures. For example, isocyanates and thioisocyanates are readily prepared by reacting the appropriate amine with phosgene or thiophosgene. Examples of isocyanates and thioisocyanates suitable for use in this reaction include, but are not limited to, ethyl isocyanate, *n*-propyl isocyanate, 4-cyanophenyl isocyanate, 3-methoxyphenyl isocyanate, 2-phenylethyl isocyanate, methyl thioisocyanate, ethyl thioisocyanate, 2-phenylethyl thioisocyanate, 3-phenylpropyl thioisocyanate, 3-(*N,N*-diethylamino)propyl thioisocyanate, phenyl thioisocyanate, benzyl thioisocyanate, 3-pyridyl thioisocyanate, fluorescein isothiocyanate (isomer I) and the like.

Furthermore, when a compound of formula I or an intermediate thereof contains a primary or secondary amino group, the amino group can be reductively alkylated using aldehydes or ketones to form a secondary or tertiary amino group. This reaction is typically conducted by contacting the amino compound with at least one equivalent, preferably about 1.1 to about 1.5 equivalents, of an aldehyde or ketone and at least one equivalent based on the amino compound of a metal hydride reducing agent, such as sodium cyanoborohydride, in an inert diluent, such as methanol, tetrahydrofuran, mixtures thereof and the like, at a temperature ranging from about 0°C to about 50°C for about 1 to about 72 hours. Aldehydes and ketones suitable for use in this reaction include, by way of example, benzaldehyde, 4-chlorobenzaldehyde, valeraldehyde and the like.

30

-- 71 --

In a similar manner, when a compound of formula I or an intermediate thereof has a substituent containing a hydroxyl group, the hydroxyl group can be further modified or derivatized either before or after the above coupling reactions to provide, by way of example, ethers, carbamates and the like. Compounds having a hydroxyl group on the R³ substituent, for example, can be prepared using an amino acid derivative of formula VI derived from tyrosine and the like in the above-described reactions.

By way of example, a compound of formula I or an intermediate thereof having a substituent containing a hydroxyl group, such as where R³ is a (4-hydroxyphenyl)methyl group, can be readily *O*-alkylated to form ethers. This *O*-alkylation reaction is typically conducted by contacting the hydroxy compound with a suitable alkali or alkaline earth metal base, such as potassium carbonate, in an inert diluent, such as acetone, 2-butanone and the like, to form the alkali or alkaline earth metal salt of the hydroxyl group. This salt is generally not isolated, but is reacted *in situ* with at least one equivalent of an alkyl or substituted alkyl halide or sulfonate, such as an alkyl chloride, bromide, iodide, mesylate or tosylate, to afford the ether. Generally, this reaction is conducted at a temperature ranging from about 60°C to about 150°C for about 24 to about 72 hours. Preferably, a catalytic amount of sodium or potassium iodide is added to the reaction mixture when an alkyl chloride or bromide is employed in the reaction.

Examples of alkyl or substituted alkyl halides and sulfonates suitable for use in this reaction include, but are not limited to, *tert*-butyl bromoacetate, *N-tert*-butyl chloroacetamide, 1-bromoethylbenzene, ethyl α -bromophenylacetate, 2-(*N*-ethyl-*N*-phenylamino)ethyl chloride, 2-(*N,N*-ethylamino)ethyl chloride, 2-(*N,N*-diisopropylamino)ethyl chloride, 2-(*N,N*-dibenzylamino)ethyl chloride, 3-(*N,N*-ethylamino)propyl chloride, 3-(*N*-

-- 72 --

benzyl-*N*-methylamino)propyl chloride, *N*-(2-chloroethyl)morpholine, 2-(hexamethyleneimino)ethyl chloride, 3-(*N*-methylpiperazine)propyl chloride, 1-(3-chlorophenyl)-4-(3-chloropropyl)piperazine, 2-(4-hydroxy-4-phenylpiperidine)ethyl chloride, *N*-*tert*-butyloxycarbonyl-
5 3-piperidinemethyl tosylate, and the like.

Alternatively, a hydroxyl group present on a substituent of a compound of formula I or an intermediate thereof can be *O*-alkylated using the Mitsunobu reaction. In this reaction, an alcohol, such as 3-(*N,N*-
10 dimethylamino)-1-propanol and the like, is reacted with about 1.0 to about 1.3 equivalents of triphenylphosphine and about 1.0 to about 1.3 equivalents of diethyl azodicarboxylate in an inert diluent, such as tetrahydrofuran, at a temperature ranging from about -10°C to about 5°C for about 0.25 to about 1 hour. About 1.0 to about 1.3 equivalents of a hydroxy compound, such as
15 *N*-*tert*-butyltyrosine methyl ester, is then added and the reaction mixture is stirred at a temperature of from about 0°C to about 30°C for about 2 to about 48 hours to provide the *O*-alkylated product.

In a similar manner, a compound of formula I or an intermediate
20 thereof containing an aryl hydroxy group can be reacted with an aryl iodide to provide a diaryl ether. Generally, this reaction is conducted by forming the alkali metal salt of the hydroxyl group using a suitable base, such as sodium hydride, in an inert diluent such as xylenes at a temperature of about -25°C to about 10°C. The salt is then treated with about 1.1 to about 1.5
25 equivalents of cuprous bromide dimethyl sulfide complex at a temperature ranging from about 10°C to about 30°C for about 0.5 to about 2.0 hours, followed by about 1.1 to about 1.5 equivalents of an aryl iodide, such as sodium 2-iodobenzoate and the like. The reaction is then heated to a temperature of about 70°C to about 150°C for about 2 to about 24 hours to
30 provide the diaryl ether.

-- 73 --

Additionally, a hydroxy-containing compound can also be readily derivatized to form a carbamate. In one method for preparing such carbamates, a hydroxy compound of formula I or an intermediate thereof is contacted with about 1.0 to about 1.2 equivalents of 4-nitrophenyl
5 chloroformate in an inert diluent, such as dichloromethane, at a temperature ranging from about -25°C to about 0°C for about 0.5 to about 2.0 hours. Treatment of the resulting carbonate with an excess, preferably about 2 to about 5 equivalents, of a trialkylamine, such as triethylamine, for about 0.5 to 2 hours, followed by about 1.0 to about 1.5 equivalents of a primary or
10 secondary amine provides the carbamate. Examples of amines suitable for using in this reaction include, but are not limited to, piperazine, 1-methylpiperazine, 1-acetylpiperazine, morpholine, thiomorpholine, pyrrolidine, piperidine and the like.

15 Alternatively, in another method for preparing carbamates, a hydroxy-containing compound is contacted with about 1.0 to about 1.5 equivalents of a carbamyl chloride in an inert diluent, such as dichloromethane, at a temperature ranging from about 25°C to about 70°C for about 2 to about 72 hours. Typically, this reaction is conducted in the
20 presence of a suitable base to scavenge the acid generated during the reaction. Suitable bases include, by way of example, tertiary amines, such as triethylamine, diisopropylethylamine, *N*-methylmorpholine and the like. Additionally, at least one equivalent (based on the hydroxy compound) of 4-(*N,N*-dimethylamino)pyridine is preferably added to the reaction mixture to
25 facilitate the reaction. Examples of carbamyl chlorides suitable for use in this reaction include, by way of example, dimethylcarbamyl chloride, diethylcarbamyl chloride and the like.

Likewise, when a compound of formula I or an intermediate thereof
30 contains a primary or secondary hydroxyl group, such hydroxyl groups can

-- 74 --

be readily converted into a leaving group and displaced to form, for example, amines, sulfides and fluorides. For example, derivatives of 4-hydroxy-L-proline can be converted into the corresponding 4-amino, 4-thio or 4-fluoro-L-proline derivatives via nucleophilic displacement of the derivatized hydroxyl group. Generally, when a chiral compound is employed in these reactions, the stereochemistry at the carbon atom attached to the derivatized hydroxyl group is typically inverted.

These reactions are typically conducted by first converting the hydroxyl group into a leaving group, such as a tosylate, by treatment of the hydroxy compound with at least one equivalent of a sulfonyl halide, such as *p*-toluenesulfonyl chloride and the like, in pyridine. This reaction is generally conducted at a temperature of from about 0°C to about 70°C for about 1 to about 48 hours. The resulting tosylate can then be readily displaced with sodium azide, for example, by contacting the tosylate with at least one equivalent of sodium azide in an inert diluent, such as a mixture of *N,N*-dimethylformamide and water, at a temperature ranging from about 0°C to about 37°C for about 1 to about 12 hours to provide the corresponding azido compound. The azido group can then be reduced by, for example, hydrogenation using a palladium on carbon catalyst to provide the amino (-NH₂) compound.

Similarly, a tosylate group can be readily displaced by a thiol to form a sulfide. This reaction is typically conducted by contacting the tosylate with at least one equivalent of a thiol, such as thiophenol, in the presence of a suitable base, such as 1,8-diazabicyclo[5.4.0]undec-7-ene (DBU), in an inert diluent, such as *N,N*-dimethylformamide, at a temperature of from about 0°C to about 37°C for about 1 to about 12 hours to provide the sulfide. Additionally, treatment of a tosylate with morpholinosulfur trifluoride in an inert diluent, such as dichloromethane, at a temperature ranging from about

-- 75 --

0°C to about 37°C for about 12 to about 24 hours affords the corresponding fluoro compound.

Furthermore, a compound of formula I or an intermediate thereof
5 having a substituent containing an iodoaryl group, for example, when R³ is a (4-iodophenyl)methyl group, can be readily converted either before or after the above coupling reactions into a biaryl compound. Typically, this reaction is conducted by treating the iodoaryl compound with about 1.1 to about 2 equivalents of an arylzinc iodide, such as 2-
10 (methoxycarbonyl)phenylzinc iodide, in the presence of a palladium catalyst, such as palladium tetra(triphenylphosphine), in an inert diluent, such as tetrahydrofuran, at a temperature ranging from about 24°C to about 30°C until reaction completion. This reaction is further described, for example, in Rieke, *J. Org. Chem.* **1991**, 56, 1445.

15

In some cases, the compounds of formula I or intermediates thereof may contain substituents having one or more sulfur atoms. Such sulfur atoms will be present, for example, when the amino acid of formula II employed in the above reactions is derived from L-thiazolidine-4-carboxylic acid, L-(5,5-dimethyl)thiazolidine-4-carboxylic acid, L-thiamorpholine-
20 3-carboxylic acid and the like. When present, such sulfur atoms can be oxidized either before or after the above coupling reactions to provide a sulfoxide or sulfone compound using conventional reagents and reaction conditions. Suitable reagents for oxidizing a sulfide compound to a sulfoxide
25 include, by way of example, hydrogen peroxide, 3-chloroperoxybenzoic acid (MCPBA), sodium periodate and the like. The oxidation reaction is typically conducted by contacting the sulfide compound with about 0.95 to about 1.1 equivalents of the oxidizing reagent in an inert diluent, such as dichloromethane, at a temperature ranging from about -50°C to about 75°C
30 for about 1 to about 24 hours. The resulting sulfoxide can then be further

-- 76 --

oxidized to the corresponding sulfone by contacting the sulfoxide with at least one additional equivalent of an oxidizing reagent, such as hydrogen peroxide, MCPBA, potassium permanganate and the like. Alternatively, the sulfone can be prepared directly by contacting the sulfide with at least two
5 equivalents, and preferably an excess, of the oxidizing reagent. Such reactions are described further in March, "*Advanced Organic Chemistry*", 4th Ed., pp. 1201-1202, Wiley Publisher, 1992.

As described above, the compounds of formula I having an R²
10 substituent other than hydrogen can be prepared using an *N*-substituted amino acid of formula II, such as sarcosine, *N*-methyl-L-phenylalanine and the like, in the above-described coupling reactions. Alternatively, such compounds can be prepared by *N*-alkylation of a sulfonamide of formula I or IV (where R² is hydrogen) using conventional synthetic procedures.
15 Typically, this *N*-alkylation reaction is conducted by contacting the sulfonamide with at least one equivalent, preferably 1.1 to 2 equivalents, of an alkyl or substituted alkyl halide in the presence of a suitable base, such as potassium carbonate, in an inert diluent, such as acetone, 2-butanone and the like, at a temperature ranging from about 25°C to about 70°C for about 2 to
20 about 48 hours. Examples of alkyl or substituted alkyl halides suitable for use in this reaction include, but are not limited to, methyl iodide, and the like.

Additionally, the sulfonamides of formula I or IV wherein R² is
25 hydrogen and R¹ is a 2-alkoxycarbonylaryl group can be intramolecularly cyclized to form 1,2-benzisothiazol-3-one derivatives or analogues thereof. This reaction is typically conducted by treating a sulfonamide, such as *N*-(2-methoxycarbonylphenylsulfonyl)glycine-L-phenylalanine benzyl ester, with about 1.0 to 1.5 equivalents of a suitable base, such as an alkali metal
30 hydride, in an inert diluent, such as tetrahydrofuran, at a temperature

-- 77 --

ranging from about 0°C to about 30°C for about 2 to about 48 hours to afford the cyclized 1,2-benzisothiazol-3-one derivative.

Lastly, the compounds of formula I where Q is -C(S)NR⁷- are prepared by using an amino thionoacid derivative in place of amino acid II in the above described synthetic procedures. Such amino thionoacid derivatives can be prepared by the procedures described in Shalaky, et al., *J. Org. Chem.*, 61:9045-9048 (1996) and Brain, et al., *J. Org. Chem.*, 62:3808-3809 (1997) and references cited therein.

Pharmaceutical Formulations

When employed as pharmaceuticals, the compounds of formula I and IA are usually administered in the form of pharmaceutical compositions. These compounds can be administered by a variety of routes including oral, rectal, transdermal, subcutaneous, intravenous, intramuscular, and intranasal. These compounds are effective as both injectable and oral compositions. Such compositions are prepared in a manner well known in the pharmaceutical art and comprise at least one active compound.

This invention also includes pharmaceutical compositions which contain, as the active ingredient, one or more of the compounds of formula I and IA above associated with pharmaceutically acceptable carriers. In making the compositions of this invention, the active ingredient is usually mixed with an excipient, diluted by an excipient or enclosed within such a carrier which can be in the form of a capsule, sachet, paper or other container. When the excipient serves as a diluent, it can be a solid, semi-solid, or liquid material, which acts as a vehicle, carrier or medium for the active ingredient. Thus, the compositions can be in the form of tablets, pills, powders, lozenges, sachets, cachets, elixirs, suspensions, emulsions, solutions, syrups, aerosols (as a solid or in a liquid medium), ointments

-- 78 --

containing, for example, up to 10% by weight of the active compound, soft and hard gelatin capsules, suppositories, sterile injectable solutions, and sterile packaged powders.

5 In preparing a formulation, it may be necessary to mill the active compound to provide the appropriate particle size prior to combining with the other ingredients. If the active compound is substantially insoluble, it ordinarily is milled to a particle size of less than 200 mesh. If the active compound is substantially water soluble, the particle size is normally
10 adjusted by milling to provide a substantially uniform distribution in the formulation, e.g. about 40 mesh.

 Some examples of suitable excipients include lactose, dextrose, sucrose, sorbitol, mannitol, starches, gum acacia, calcium phosphate,
15 alginate, tragacanth, gelatin, calcium silicate, microcrystalline cellulose, polyvinylpyrrolidone, cellulose, water, syrup, and methyl cellulose. The formulations can additionally include: lubricating agents such as talc, magnesium stearate, and mineral oil; wetting agents; emulsifying and suspending agents; preserving agents such as methyl- and propylhydroxy-
20 benzoates; sweetening agents; and flavoring agents. The compositions of the invention can be formulated so as to provide quick, sustained or delayed release of the active ingredient after administration to the patient by employing procedures known in the art.

25 The compositions are preferably formulated in a unit dosage form, each dosage containing from about 5 to about 100 mg, more usually about 10 to about 30 mg, of the active ingredient. The term "unit dosage forms" refers to physically discrete units suitable as unitary dosages for human subjects and other mammals, each unit containing a predetermined quantity

-- 79 --

of active material calculated to produce the desired therapeutic effect, in association with a suitable pharmaceutical excipient.

5 The active compound is effective over a wide dosage range and is generally administered in a pharmaceutically effective amount. It, will be understood, however, that the amount of the compound actually administered will be determined by a physician, in the light of the relevant circumstances, including the condition to be treated, the chosen route of administration, the actual compound administered, the age, weight, and response of the
10 individual patient, the severity of the patient's symptoms, and the like.

For preparing solid compositions such as tablets, the principal active ingredient is mixed with a pharmaceutical excipient to form a solid preformulation composition containing a homogeneous mixture of a
15 compound of the present invention. When referring to these preformulation compositions as homogeneous, it is meant that the active ingredient is dispersed evenly throughout the composition so that the composition may be readily subdivided into equally effective unit dosage forms such as tablets, pills and capsules. This solid preformulation is then subdivided into unit
20 dosage forms of the type described above containing from, for example, 0.1 to about 500 mg of the active ingredient of the present invention.

The tablets or pills of the present invention may be coated or otherwise compounded to provide a dosage form affording the advantage of
25 prolonged action. For example, the tablet or pill can comprise an inner dosage and an outer dosage component, the latter being in the form of an envelope over the former. The two components can be separated by an enteric layer which serves to resist disintegration in the stomach and permit the inner component to pass intact into the duodenum or to be delayed in
30 release. A variety of materials can be used for such enteric layers or

-- 80 --

coatings, such materials including a number of polymeric acids and mixtures of polymeric acids with such materials as shellac, cetyl alcohol, and cellulose acetate.

5 The liquid forms in which the novel compositions of the present invention may be incorporated for administration orally or by injection include aqueous solutions, suitably flavored syrups, aqueous or oil suspensions, and flavored emulsions with edible oils such as cottonseed oil, sesame oil, coconut oil, or peanut oil, as well as elixirs and similar
10 pharmaceutical vehicles.

 Compositions for inhalation or insufflation include solutions and suspensions in pharmaceutically acceptable aqueous or organic solvents, or mixtures thereof, and powders. The liquid or solid compositions may
15 contain suitable pharmaceutically acceptable excipients as described *supra*. Preferably the compositions are administered by the oral or nasal respiratory route for local or systemic effect. Compositions in preferably pharmaceutically acceptable solvents may be nebulized by use of inert gases. Nebulized solutions may be breathed directly from the nebulizing device or
20 the nebulizing device may be attached to a face mask, tent, or intermittent positive pressure breathing machine. Solution, suspension, or powder compositions may be administered, preferably orally or nasally, from devices which deliver the formulation in an appropriate manner.

25 The following formulation examples illustrate the pharmaceutical compositions of the present invention.

Formulation Example 1

 Hard gelatin capsules containing the following ingredients are
30 prepared:

-- 81 --

	<u>Ingredient</u>	<u>Quantity</u> <u>(mg/capsule)</u>
	Active Ingredient	30.0
	Starch	305.0
5	Magnesium stearate	5.0

The above ingredients are mixed and filled into hard gelatin capsules in 340 mg quantities.

10 Formulation Example 2

A tablet formula is prepared using the ingredients below:

	<u>Ingredient</u>	<u>Quantity</u> <u>(mg/tablet)</u>
	Active Ingredient	25.0
15	Cellulose, microcrystalline	200.0
	Colloidal silicon dioxide	10.0
	Stearic acid	5.0

20 The components are blended and compressed to form tablets, each weighing 240 mg.

Formulation Example 3

A dry powder inhaler formulation is prepared containing the following components:

25	<u>Ingredient</u>	<u>Weight %</u>
	Active Ingredient	5
	Lactose	95

30 The active mixture is mixed with the lactose and the mixture is added to a dry powder inhaling appliance.

Formulation Example 4

35 Tablets, each containing 30 mg of active ingredient, are prepared as follows:

WO 99/06434

PCT/US98/15312

-- 82 --

	<u>Ingredient</u>	<u>Quantity</u> <u>(mg/tablet)</u>
	Active Ingredient	30.0 mg
	Starch	45.0 mg
5	Microcrystalline cellulose	35.0 mg
	Polyvinylpyrrolidone (as 10% solution in water)	4.0 mg
	Sodium carboxymethyl starch	4.5 mg
	Magnesium stearate	0.5 mg
10	Talc	<u>1.0 mg</u>
	Total	120 mg

15 The active ingredient, starch and cellulose are passed through a No. 20 mesh U.S. sieve and mixed thoroughly. The solution of polyvinylpyrrolidone is mixed with the resultant powders, which are then passed through a 16 mesh U.S. sieve. The granules so produced are dried at 50° to 60°C and passed through a 16 mesh U.S. sieve. The sodium carboxymethyl starch, magnesium stearate, and talc, previously passed through a No. 30 mesh U.S. sieve, are then added to the granules which, after mixing, are compressed on a tablet machine to yield tablets each weighing 150 mg.

Formulation Example 5

Capsules, each containing 40 mg of medicament are made as follows:

	<u>Ingredient</u>	<u>Quantity</u> <u>(mg/capsule)</u>
25	Active Ingredient	40.0 mg
	Starch	109.0 mg
	Magnesium stearate	<u>1.0 mg</u>
30	Total	150.0 mg

The active ingredient, cellulose, starch, and magnesium stearate are blended, passed through a No. 20 mesh U.S. sieve, and filled into hard gelatin capsules in 150 mg quantities.

35

-- 83 --

Formulation Example 6

Suppositories, each containing 25 mg of active ingredient are made as follows:

5

<u>Ingredient</u>	<u>Amount</u>
Active Ingredient	25 mg
Saturated fatty acid glycerides to	2,000 mg

10

The active ingredient is passed through a No. 60 mesh U.S. sieve and suspended in the saturated fatty acid glycerides previously melted using the minimum heat necessary. The mixture is then poured into a suppository mold of nominal 2.0 g capacity and allowed to cool.

15

Formulation Example 7

Suspensions, each containing 50 mg of medicament per 5.0 ml dose are made as follows:

20

<u>Ingredient</u>	<u>Amount</u>
Active Ingredient	50.0 mg
Xanthan gum	4.0 mg
Sodium carboxymethyl cellulose (11 %)/ Microcrystalline cellulose (89 %)	50.0 mg
Sucrose	1.75 g
Sodium benzoate	10.0 mg
Flavor and Color	q.v.
Purified water to	5.0 ml

25

30

The medicament, sucrose and xanthan gum are blended, passed through a No. 10 mesh U.S. sieve, and then mixed with a previously made solution of the microcrystalline cellulose and sodium carboxymethyl cellulose in water. The sodium benzoate, flavor, and color are diluted with some of the water and added with stirring. Sufficient water is then added to produce the required volume.

35

-- 84 --

Formulation Example 8

	<u>Ingredient</u>	<u>Quantity</u> <u>(mg/capsule)</u>
5	Active Ingredient	15.0 mg
	Starch	407.0 mg
	Magnesium stearate	<u>3.0 mg</u>
	Total	425.0 mg

10 The active ingredient, cellulose, starch, and magnesium stearate are blended, passed through a No. 20 mesh U.S. sieve, and filled into hard gelatin capsules in 560 mg quantities.

Formulation Example 9

An intravenous formulation may be prepared as follows:

15	<u>Ingredient</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
	Active Ingredient	250.0 mg
	Isotonic saline	1000 ml

20 Formulation Example 10

A topical formulation may be prepared as follows:

	<u>Ingredient</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
25	Active Ingredient	1-10 g
	Emulsifying Wax	30 g
	Liquid Paraffin	20 g
	White Soft Paraffin	to 100 g

30 The white soft paraffin is heated until molten. The liquid paraffin and emulsifying wax are incorporated and stirred until dissolved. The active ingredient is added and stirring is continued until dispersed. The mixture is then cooled until solid.

35 Another preferred formulation employed in the methods of the present invention employs transdermal delivery devices ("patches"). Such transdermal patches may be used to provide continuous or discontinuous infusion of the compounds of the present invention in controlled amounts.

-- 85 --

The construction and use of transdermal patches for the delivery of pharmaceutical agents is well known in the art. See, e.g., U.S. Patent 5,023,252, issued June 11, 1991, herein incorporated by reference. Such patches may be constructed for continuous, pulsatile, or on demand delivery of pharmaceutical agents.

The pharmaceutical composition may be introduced to the brain, either directly or indirectly, when it is desirable or necessary. Direct techniques usually involve placement of a drug delivery catheter into the host's ventricular system to bypass the blood-brain barrier. One such implantable delivery system used for the transport of biological factors to specific anatomical regions of the body is described in U.S. Patent 5,011,472 which is herein incorporated by reference.

Indirect techniques, which are generally preferred, usually involve formulating the compositions to provide for drug latentiation by the conversion of hydrophilic drugs into lipid-soluble drugs. Latentiation is generally achieved through blocking of the hydroxy, carbonyl, sulfate, and primary amine groups present on the drug to render the drug more lipid soluble and amenable to transportation across the blood-brain barrier. Alternatively, the delivery of hydrophilic drugs may be enhanced by intra-arterial infusion of hypertonic solutions which can transiently open the blood-brain barrier.

Utility

The compounds of this invention can be employed to bind VLA-4 ($\alpha_4\beta_1$ integrin) in biological samples and, accordingly have utility in, for example, assaying such samples for VLA-4. In such assays, the compounds can be bound to a solid support and the VLA-4 sample added thereto. The amount of VLA-4 in the sample can be determined by conventional methods such as

-- 86 --

use of a sandwich ELISA assay. Alternatively, labeled VLA-4 can be used in a competitive assay to measure for the presence of VLA-4 in the sample. Other suitable assays are well known in the art.

5 In addition, certain of the compounds of this invention inhibit, *in vivo*, adhesion of leukocytes to endothelial cells mediated by VLA-4 and, accordingly, can be used in the treatment of diseases mediated by VLA-4. Such diseases include inflammatory diseases in mammalian patients such as asthma, Alzheimer's disease, atherosclerosis, AIDS dementia,
10 diabetes (including acute juvenile onset diabetes), inflammatory bowel disease (including ulcerative colitis and Crohn's disease), multiple sclerosis, rheumatoid arthritis, tissue transplantation, tumor metastasis, meningitis, encephalitis, stroke, and other cerebral traumas, nephritis, retinitis, atopic dermatitis, psoriasis, myocardial ischemia and acute leukocyte-mediated lung
15 injury such as that which occurs in adult respiratory distress syndrome.

 The biological activity of the compounds identified above may be assayed in a variety of systems. For example, a compound can be immobilized on a solid surface and adhesion of cells expressing VLA-4 can
20 be measured. Using such formats, large numbers of compounds can be screened. Cells suitable for this assay include any leukocytes known to express VLA-4 such as T cells, B cells, monocytes, eosinophils, and basophils. A number of leukocyte cell lines can also be used, examples include Jurkat and U937.

25 The test compounds can also be tested for the ability to competitively inhibit binding between VLA-4 and VCAM-1, or between VLA-4 and a labeled compound known to bind VLA-4 such as a compound of this invention or antibodies to VLA-4. In these assays, the VCAM-1 can be
30 immobilized on a solid surface. VCAM-1 may also be expressed as a

-- 87 --

recombinant fusion protein having an Ig tail (e.g., IgG) so that binding to VLA-4 may be detected in an immunoassay. Alternatively, VCAM-1 expressing cells, such as activated endothelial cells or VCAM-1 transfected fibroblasts can be used. For assays to measure the ability to block adhesion to brain endothelial cells, the assays described in International Patent Application Publication No. WO 91/05038 are particularly preferred. This application is incorporated herein by reference in its entirety.

Many assay formats employ labelled assay components. The labelling systems can be in a variety of forms. The label may be coupled directly or indirectly to the desired component of the assay according to methods well known in the art. A wide variety of labels may be used. The component may be labelled by any one of several methods. The most common method of detection is the use of autoradiography with ^3H , ^{125}I , ^{35}S , ^{14}C , or ^{32}P labelled compounds or the like. Non-radioactive labels include ligands which bind to labelled antibodies, fluorophores, chemiluminescent agents, enzymes and antibodies which can serve as specific binding pair members for a labelled ligand. The choice of label depends on the sensitivity required, ease of conjugation with the compound, stability requirements, and available instrumentation.

Appropriate *in vivo* models for demonstrating efficacy in treating inflammatory responses include EAE (experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis) in mice, rats, guinea pigs or primates, as well as other inflammatory models dependent upon $\alpha 4$ integrins.

Compounds having the desired biological activity may be modified as necessary to provide desired properties such as improved pharmacological properties (e.g., *in vivo* stability, bio-availability), or the ability to be detected in diagnostic applications. For instance, inclusion of one or more

-- 88 --

D-amino acids in the sulfonamides of this invention typically increases *in vivo* stability. Stability can be assayed in a variety of ways such as by measuring the half-life of the proteins during incubation with peptidases or human plasma or serum. A number of such protein stability assays have
5 been described (see, e.g., Verhoef, et al., Eur. J. Drug Metab. Pharmacokinet., 1990, 15(2):83-93).

For diagnostic purposes, a wide variety of labels may be linked to the compounds, which may provide, directly or indirectly, a detectable signal.
10 Thus, the compounds of the subject invention may be modified in a variety of ways for a variety of end purposes while still retaining biological activity. In addition, various reactive sites may be introduced at the terminus for linking to particles, solid substrates, macromolecules, or the like.

15 Labeled compounds can be used in a variety of *in vivo* or *in vitro* applications. A wide variety of labels may be employed, such as radionuclides (e.g., gamma-emitting radioisotopes such as technetium-99 or indium-111), fluorescers (e.g., fluorescein), enzymes, enzyme substrates, enzyme cofactors, enzyme inhibitors, chemiluminescent compounds,
20 bioluminescent compounds, and the like. Those of ordinary skill in the art will know of other suitable labels for binding to the complexes, or will be able to ascertain such using routine experimentation. The binding of these labels is achieved using standard techniques common to those of ordinary skill in the art.

25

In vitro uses include diagnostic applications such as monitoring inflammatory responses by detecting the presence of leukocytes expressing VLA-4. The compounds of this invention can also be used for isolating or labeling such cells. In addition, as mentioned above, the compounds of the

-- 89 --

invention can be used to assay for potential inhibitors of VLA-4/VCAM-1 interactions.

For *in vivo* diagnostic imaging to identify, e.g., sites of inflammation,
5 radioisotopes are typically used in accordance with well known techniques. The radioisotopes may be bound to the peptide either directly or indirectly using intermediate functional groups. For instance, chelating agents such as diethylenetriaminepentaacetic acid (DTPA) and ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid (EDTA) and similar molecules have been used to bind proteins to
10 metallic ion radioisotopes.

The complexes can also be labeled with a paramagnetic isotope for purposes of *in vivo* diagnosis, as in magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) or electron spin resonance (ESR), both of which are well known. In general,
15 any conventional method for visualizing diagnostic images can be used. Usually gamma- and positron-emitting radioisotopes are used for camera imaging and paramagnetic isotopes are used for MRI. Thus, the compounds can be used to monitor the course of amelioration of an inflammatory response in an individual. By measuring the increase or decrease in
20 lymphocytes expressing VLA-4 it is possible to determine whether a particular therapeutic regimen aimed at ameliorating the disease is effective.

The pharmaceutical compositions of the present invention can be used to block or inhibit cellular adhesion associated with a number of diseases and
25 disorders. For instance, a number of inflammatory disorders are associated with integrins or leukocytes. Treatable disorders include, e.g., transplantation rejection (e.g., allograft rejection), Alzheimer's disease, atherosclerosis, AIDS dementia, diabetes (including acute juvenile onset diabetes), retinitis, cancer metastases, rheumatoid arthritis, acute
30 leukocyte-mediated lung injury (e.g., adult respiratory distress syndrome),

-- 90 --

asthma, nephritis, and acute and chronic inflammation, including atopic dermatitis, psoriasis, myocardial ischemia, and inflammatory bowel disease (including Crohn's disease and ulcerative colitis). In preferred embodiments, the pharmaceutical compositions are used to treat
5 inflammatory brain disorders, such as multiple sclerosis (MS), viral meningitis and encephalitis.

Inflammatory bowel disease is a collective term for two similar diseases referred to as Crohn's disease and ulcerative colitis. Crohn's disease is an
10 idiopathic, chronic ulcerconstrictive inflammatory disease characterized by sharply delimited and typically transmural involvement of all layers of the bowel wall by a granulomatous inflammatory reaction. Any segment of the gastrointestinal tract, from the mouth to the anus, may be involved, although the disease most commonly affects the terminal ileum and/or colon.
15 Ulcerative colitis is an inflammatory response limited largely to the colonic mucosa and submucosa. Lymphocytes and macrophages are numerous in lesions of inflammatory bowel disease and may contribute to inflammatory injury.

20 Asthma is a disease characterized by increased responsiveness of the tracheobronchial tree to various stimuli potentiating paroxysmal constriction of the bronchial airways. The stimuli cause release of various mediators of inflammation from IgE-coated mast cells including histamine, eosinophilic and neutrophilic chemotactic factors, leukotrienes, prostaglandin and platelet
25 activating factor. Release of these factors recruits basophils, eosinophils and neutrophils, which cause inflammatory injury.

Atherosclerosis is a disease of arteries (e.g., coronary, carotid, aorta and iliac). The basic lesion, the atheroma, consists of a raised focal plaque
30 within the intima, having a core of lipid and a covering fibrous cap.

-- 91 --

Atheromas compromise arterial blood flow and weaken affected arteries. Myocardial and cerebral infarcts are a major consequence of this disease. Macrophages and leukocytes are recruited to atheromas and contribute to inflammatory injury.

5

Rheumatoid arthritis is a chronic, relapsing inflammatory disease that primarily causes impairment and destruction of joints. Rheumatoid arthritis usually first affects the small joints of the hands and feet but then may involve the wrists, elbows, ankles and knees. The arthritis results from interaction of synovial cells with leukocytes that infiltrate from the circulation into the synovial lining of the joints. See *e.g.*, Paul, *Immunology* (3d ed., Raven Press, 1993).

10

Another indication for the compounds of this invention is in treatment of organ or graft rejection mediated by VLA-4. Over recent years there has been a considerable improvement in the efficiency of surgical techniques for transplanting tissues and organs such as skin, kidney, liver, heart, lung, pancreas and bone marrow. Perhaps the principal outstanding problem is the lack of satisfactory agents for inducing immunotolerance in the recipient to the transplanted allograft or organ. When allogeneic cells or organs are transplanted into a host (*i.e.*, the donor and donee are different individuals from the same species), the host immune system is likely to mount an immune response to foreign antigens in the transplant (host-versus-graft disease) leading to destruction of the transplanted tissue. CD8⁺ cells, CD4 cells and monocytes are all involved in the rejection of transplant tissues. Compounds of this invention which bind to alpha-4 integrin are useful, *inter alia*, to block alloantigen-induced immune responses in the donee thereby preventing such cells from participating in the destruction of the transplanted tissue or organ. See, *e.g.*, Paul et al., *Transplant International* 9, 420-425 (1996); Georczynski et al., *Immunology* 87, 573-580 (1996); Georczynski et

20

25

30

-- 92 --

al., *Transplant. Immunol.* 3, 55-61 (1995); Yang et al., *Transplantation* 60, 71-76 (1995); and Anderson et al., *APMIS* 102, 23-27 (1994).

5 A related use for compounds of this invention which bind to VLA-4 is in modulating the immune response involved in "graft versus host" disease (GVHD). See *e.g.*, Schlegel et al., *J. Immunol.* 155, 3856-3865 (1995). GVHD is a potentially fatal disease that occurs when immunologically competent cells are transferred to an allogeneic recipient. In this situation, the donor's immunocompetent cells may attack tissues in the recipient.

10 Tissues of the skin, gut epithelia and liver are frequent targets and may be destroyed during the course of GVHD. The disease presents an especially severe problem when immune tissue is being transplanted, such as in bone marrow transplantation; but less severe GVHD has also been reported in other cases as well, including heart and liver transplants. The therapeutic

15 agents of the present invention are used, *inter alia*, to block activation of the donor T-cells thereby interfering with their ability to lyse target cells in the host.

A further use of the compounds of this invention is inhibiting tumor

20 metastasis. Several tumor cells have been reported to express VLA-4 and compounds which bind VLA-4 block adhesion of such cells to endothelial cells. Steinback et al., *Urol. Res.* 23, 175-83 (1995); Orosz et al., *Int. J. Cancer* 60, 867-71 (1995); Freedman et al., *Leuk. Lymphoma* 13, 47-52 (1994); and Okahara et al., *Cancer Res.* 54, 3233-6 (1994).

25

A further use of the compounds of this invention is in treating multiple sclerosis. Multiple sclerosis is a progressive neurological autoimmune disease that affects an estimated 250,000 to 350,000 people in the United States. Multiple sclerosis is thought to be the result of a specific

30 autoimmune reaction in which certain leukocytes attack and initiate the

-- 93 --

destruction of myelin, the insulating sheath covering nerve fibers. In an animal model for multiple sclerosis, murine monoclonal antibodies directed against VLA-4 have been shown to block the adhesion of leukocytes to the endothelium, and thus prevent inflammation of the central nervous system and subsequent paralysis in the animals¹⁶.

Pharmaceutical compositions of the invention are suitable for use in a variety of drug delivery systems. Suitable formulations for use in the present invention are found in *Remington's Pharmaceutical Sciences*, Mace Publishing Company, Philadelphia, PA, 17th ed. (1985).

In order to enhance serum half-life, the compounds may be encapsulated, introduced into the lumen of liposomes, prepared as a colloid, or other conventional techniques may be employed which provide an extended serum half-life of the compounds. A variety of methods are available for preparing liposomes, as described in, e.g., Szoka, et al., U.S. Patent Nos. 4,235,871, 4,501,728 and 4,837,028 each of which is incorporated herein by reference.

The amount administered to the patient will vary depending upon what is being administered, the purpose of the administration, such as prophylaxis or therapy, the state of the patient, the manner of administration, and the like. In therapeutic applications, compositions are administered to a patient already suffering from a disease in an amount sufficient to cure or at least partially arrest the symptoms of the disease and its complications. An amount adequate to accomplish this is defined as a "therapeutically effective dose." Amounts effective for this use will depend on the disease condition being treated as well as by the judgment of the attending clinician depending upon factors such as the severity of the inflammation, the age, weight and general condition of the patient, and the like.

-- 94 --

The compositions administered to a patient are in the form of pharmaceutical compositions described above. These compositions may be sterilized by conventional sterilization techniques, or may be sterile filtered. The resulting aqueous solutions may be packaged for use as is, or
5 lyophilized, the lyophilized preparation being combined with a sterile aqueous carrier prior to administration. The pH of the compound preparations typically will be between 3 and 11, more preferably from 5 to 9 and most preferably from 7 to 8. It will be understood that use of certain of the foregoing excipients, carriers, or stabilizers will result in the formation
10 of pharmaceutical salts.

The therapeutic dosage of the compounds of the present invention will vary according to, for example, the particular use for which the treatment is made, the manner of administration of the compound, the health and
15 condition of the patient, and the judgment of the prescribing physician. For example, for intravenous administration, the dose will typically be in the range of about 20 μg to about 500 μg per kilogram body weight, preferably about 100 μg to about 300 μg per kilogram body weight. Suitable dosage ranges for intranasal administration are generally about 0.1 μg to 1 mg per
20 kilogram body weight. Effective doses can be extrapolated from dose-response curves derived from *in vitro* or animal model test systems.

The following synthetic and biological examples are offered to illustrate this invention and are not to be construed in any way as limiting the scope of
25 this invention. Unless otherwise stated, all temperatures are in degrees Celsius.

-- 95 --

EXAMPLES

In the examples below, the following abbreviations have the following meanings. If an abbreviation is not defined, it has its generally accepted meaning.

5	aq or aq.	=	aqueous
	AcOH	=	acetic acid
	bd	=	broad doublet
	bm	=	broad multiplet
	bs	=	broad singlet
10	Bn	=	benzyl
	Boc	=	<i>tert</i> -butoxycarbonyl
	Boc ₂ O	=	di- <i>tert</i> -butyl dicarbonate
	BOP	=	benzotriazol-1-yloxy- tris(dimethylamino)phosphonium
15			hexafluorophosphate
	Cbz	=	carbobenzyloxy
	CHCl ₃	=	chloroform
	CH ₂ Cl ₂	=	dichloromethane
	(COCl) ₂	=	oxalyl chloride
20	d	=	doublet
	dd	=	doublet of doublets
	dt	=	doublet of triplets
	DBU	=	1,8-diazabicyclo[5.4.0]undec-7-ene
	DCC	=	1,3-dicyclohexylcarbodiimide
25	DMAP	=	4- <i>N,N</i> -dimethylaminopyridine
	DME	=	ethylene glycol dimethyl ether
	DMF	=	<i>N,N</i> -dimethylformamide
	DMSO	=	dimethylsulfoxide
	EDC	=	1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3- ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride
30	Et ₃ N	=	triethylamine
	Et ₂ O	=	diethyl ether
	EtOAc	=	ethyl acetate
	EtOH	=	ethanol
35	eq or eq.	=	equivalent
	Fmoc	=	<i>N</i> -(9-fluorenylmethoxycarbonyl)
	FmocONSu	=	<i>N</i> -(9-fluorenylmethoxycarbonyl)- succinimide
40	g	=	grams
	h	=	hour
	H ₂ O	=	water
	HBr	=	hydrobromic acid
	HCl	=	hydrochloric acid

-- 96 --

	HOBT	=	1-hydroxybenzotriazole hydrate
	hr	=	hour
	K ₂ CO ₃	=	potassium carbonate
	L	=	liter
5	m	=	multiplet
	MeOH	=	methanol
	mg	=	milligram
	MgSO ₄	=	magnesium sulfate
	mL	=	milliliter
10	mm	=	millimeter
	mM	=	millimolar
	mmol	=	millimol
	mp	=	melting point
	N	=	normal
15	NaCl	=	sodium chloride
	Na ₂ CO ₃	=	sodium carbonate
	NaHCO ₃	=	sodium bicarbonate
	NaOEt	=	sodium ethoxide
	NaOH	=	sodium hydroxide
20	NH ₄ Cl	=	ammonium chloride
	NMM	=	N-methylmorpholine
	Phe	=	L-phenylalanine
	Pro	=	L-proline
	psi	=	pounds per square inch
25	PtO ₂	=	platinum oxide
	q	=	quartet
	quint.	=	quintet
	rt	=	room temperature
	s	=	singlet
30	sat	=	saturated
	t	=	triplet
	t-BuOH	=	tert-butanol
	TFA	=	trifluoroacetic acid
	THF	=	tetrahydrofuran
35	TLC or tlc	=	thin layer chromatography
	Ts	=	tosyl
	TsCl	=	tosyl chloride
	TsOH	=	tosylate
	μL	=	microliter
40			

In the examples below, all temperatures are in degrees Celcius (unless otherwise indicated). The following Methods were used to prepare the compounds set forth below as indicated.

-- 97 --

Method 1

N-Tosylation Procedure

N-Tosylation of the appropriate amino acid was conducted via the method of Cupps, Boutin and Rapoport *J. Org. Chem.* 1985, 50, 3972.

5

Method 2

Methyl Ester Preparation Procedure

Amino acid methyl esters were prepared using the method of Brenner and Huber *Helv. Chim. Acta* 1953, 36, 1109.

10

Method 3

BOP Coupling Procedure

The desired dipeptide ester was prepared by the reaction of a suitable N-protected amino acid (1 equivalent) with the appropriate amino acid ester or amino acid ester hydrochloride (1 equivalent), benzotriazol-1-yloxy-tris(dimethylamino)phosphonium hexafluorophosphate [BOP] (2.0 equivalent), triethylamine (1.1 equivalent), and DMF. The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight. The crude product is purified by flash chromatography to afford the dipeptide ester.

15

20

Method 4

Hydrogenation Procedure I

Hydrogenation was performed using 10% palladium on carbon (10% by weight) in methanol at 30 psi overnight. The mixture was filtered through a pad of Celite and the filtrate concentrated to yield the desired amino compound.

25

-- 98 --

Method 5

Hydrolysis Procedure I

To a chilled (0°C) THF/H₂O solution (2:1, 5 - 10 mL) of the appropriate ester was added LiOH (or NaOH) (0.95 equivalents). The temperature was maintained at 0°C and the reaction was complete in 1-3 hours. The reaction mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate and the aqueous phase was lyophilized resulting in the desired carboxylate salt.

Method 6

Ester Hydrolysis Procedure II

To a chilled (0°C) THF/H₂O solution (2:1, 5 - 10 mL) of the appropriate ester was added LiOH (1.1 equivalents). The temperature was maintained at 0°C and the reaction was complete in 1-3 hours. The reaction mixture was concentrated and the residue was taken up into H₂O and the pH adjusted to 2-3 with aqueous HCl. The product was extracted with ethyl acetate and the combined organic phase was washed with brine, dried over MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated to yield the desired acid.

Method 7

Ester Hydrolysis Procedure III

The appropriate ester was dissolved in dioxane/H₂O (1:1) and 0.9 equivalents of 0.5 N NaOH was added. The reaction was stirred for 3-16 hours and then concentrated. The resulting residue was dissolved in H₂O and extracted with ethyl acetate. The aqueous phase was lyophilized to yield the desired carboxylate sodium salt.

Method 8

Sulfonylation Procedure I

To the appropriately protected aminophenylalanine analog (11.2 mmol) dissolved in methylene chloride (25ml) and cooled to -78°C was added the

-- 99 --

desired sulfonyl chloride (12 mmol) followed by dropwise addition of pyridine (2 mL). The solution was allowed to warm to room temperature and was stirred for 48 hr. The reaction solution was transferred to a 250 mL separatory funnel with methylene chloride (100 mL) and extracted with 1N HCl (50 mL x 3), brine (50 mL), and water (100 mL). The organic phase was dried (MgSO₄) and the solvent concentrated to yield the desired product.

Method 9

10 Reductive Amination Procedure

Reductive amination of Tos-Pro-p-NH₂-Phe with the appropriate aldehyde was conducted using acetic acid, sodium triacetoxyborohydride, methylene chloride and the combined mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight. The crude product was purified by flash chromatography.

Method 10

BOC Removal Procedure

Anhydrous hydrochloride (HCl) gas was bubbled through a methanolic solution of the appropriate Boc-amino acid ester at 0°C for 15 minutes and the reaction mixture was stirred for three hours. The solution was concentrated to a syrup and dissolved in Et₂O and reconcentrated. This procedure was repeated and the resulting solid was placed under high vacuum overnight.

25

-- 100 --

Method 11

tert-Butyl Ester Hydrolysis Procedure I

The *tert*-butyl ester was dissolved in CH₂Cl₂ and treated with TFA. The reaction was complete in 1-3 hr at which time the reaction mixture was concentrated and the residue dissolved in H₂O and lyophilized to yield the desired acid.

Method 12

EDC Coupling Procedure I

To a CH₂Cl₂ solution (5-20 mL) of N-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-proline (1 equivalent), the appropriate amino acid ester hydrochloride (1 equivalent), N-methylmorpholine (1.1-2.2 equivalents) and 1-hydroxybenzotriazole (2 equivalents) were added and mixed, placed in an ice bath and 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethyl carbodiimide (1.1 equivalents) added. The reaction was allowed to rise to room temperature and stirred overnight. The reaction mixture was poured into H₂O and the organic phase was washed with sat. NaHCO₃, brine, dried (MgSO₄ or Na₂SO₄), filtered and concentrated. The crude product was purified by column chromatography.

20

Method 13

EDC Coupling Procedure II

To a DMF solution (5-20 mL) of the appropriate N-protected amino acid (1 equivalent), the appropriate amino acid ester hydrochloride (1 equivalent), Et₃N (1.1 equivalents) and 1-hydroxybenzotriazole (2 equivalents) were mixed, placed in an ice bath and 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethyl carbodiimide (1.1 equivalents) was added. The reaction was allowed to rise to room temperature and stirred overnight. The reaction mixture was partitioned between EtOAc and H₂O and the organic phase washed with 0.2 N citric acid, H₂O, sat. NaHCO₃, brine, dried (MgSO₄ or Na₂SO₄), filtered

-- 101 --

and concentrated. The crude product was purified by column chromatography or preparative TLC.

Method 14

5

Sulfonylation Procedure II

The appropriate sulfonyl chloride was dissolved in CH_2Cl_2 and placed in an ice bath. L-Pro-L-Phe-OMe • HCl (1 equivalent) and Et_3N (1.1 equivalent) was added and the reaction allowed to warm to room temperature and stirred overnight under an atmosphere of nitrogen. The reaction mixture was concentrated and the residue partitioned between EtOAc and H_2O and the organic phase washed with sat. NaHCO_3 , brine, dried (MgSO_4 or Na_2SO_4), filtered and concentrated. The crude product was purified by column chromatography or preparative TLC.

15

Method 15

Sulfonylation Procedure III

To a solution of L-Pro-L-4-(3-dimethylaminopropoxy)-Phe-OMe [prepared using the procedure described in Method 10] (1 equivalent) in CH_2Cl_2 was added Et_3N (5 equivalents) followed by the appropriate sulfonyl chloride (1.1 equivalent). The reaction was allowed to warm to room temperature and stirred overnight under an atmosphere of nitrogen. The mixture was concentrated, dissolved in EtOAc, washed with sat. NaHCO_3 and 0.2 N citric acid. The aqueous phase was made basic with solid NaHCO_3 and the product extracted with EtOAc. The organic phase was washed with brine, dried (MgSO_4 or Na_2SO_4), filtered and concentrated. The crude methyl ester was purified by preparative TLC. The corresponding acid was prepared using the procedure described in Method 7.

-- 102 --

Method 16

Hydrogenation Procedure II

To a methanol (10 -15 mL) solution of the azlactone was added NaOAc (1 equivalent) and 10% Pd/C. This mixture was placed on the hydrogenator at 40 psi H₂. After 8 - 16 hours, the reaction mixture was filtered through a pad of Celite and the filtrate concentrated to yield the dehydrodipeptide methyl ester. The ester was dissolved in dioxane/H₂O (5- 10 mL), to which was added 0.5 N NaOH (1.05 equivalents). After stirring for 1- 3 hours, the reaction mix was concentrated and the residue was redissolved in H₂O and washed with EtOAc. The aqueous phase was made acidic with 0.2 N HCl and the product was extracted with EtOAc. The combined organic phase was washed with brine (1 x 5 mL), dried (MgSO₄ or Na₂SO₄), filtered and concentrated to yield the acid as approximately a 1:1 mixture of diastereomers.

15

Method 17

tert-Butyl Ester Hydrolysis Procedure II

The *tert*-butyl ester was dissolved in CH₂Cl₂ (5 mL) and treated with TFA (5 mL). The reaction was complete in 1-3 hours at which time the reaction mixture was concentrated and the residue dissolved in H₂O and concentrated. The residue was redissolved in H₂O and lyophilized to yield the desired product.

20

25

Example 1

Synthesis of
N-(Toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-
[3-(3-phenylpropyl)thioureido]-L-phenylalanine
Methyl Ester

30

An equimolar solution of *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-amino-L-phenylalanine methyl ester and 3-phenylpropyl isothiocyanate in toluene was

-- 103 --

stirred at room temperature for 16 hr. The solvent was stripped off giving an amber oil which was submitted to preparatory HPLC (Waters silica cartridge; 85/15 CH₂Cl₂/EtOAc) for purification. The fractions were collected and the solvent removed yielding the title compound as a white solid, mp = 74-80°C.

Example 2

Synthesis of N-(Toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4- [3-(2-phenylethyl)thioureido]-L-phenylalanine Methyl Ester

An equimolar solution of *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-amino-L-phenylalanine methyl ester and 3-phenylethyl isothiocyanate in toluene was stirred at room temperature for 16 hr. The solvent was stripped off giving an amber oil which was submitted to preparatory HPLC (Waters silica cartridge; 85/15 CH₂Cl₂/EtOAc) for purification. The fractions were collected and the solvent removed yielding the title compound as a white solid, mp = 76-81°C.

Example 3

Synthesis of N-(Toluene-4-sulfonyl-L-prolyl-4- [1-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)indoline-2-carboxamido]- L-phenylalanine

The title compound was prepared using the procedures described in Method 13 and Method 6.

NMR data was as follows:

¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆): δ = 8.00 (d, 1H), 7.70 (d, 2H), 7.45 (d, 4H), 7.19 (t, 4H), 6.90 (t, 1H), 4.85 (m, 1H), 4.00 (m, 1H), 4.10 (m, 1H), 3.00 (m, 6H), 2.40 (s, 3H), 1.55 (m, 8H), 1.30 (s, 9H).

Mass Spectroscopy: (+) FAB (M+H)⁺ 677 (M+Na)⁺ 699.

-- 104 --

Example 4

Synthesis of
N-(Toluene-4-sulfonyl)-*L*-prolyl-4-
{3-[2-(morpholin-4-yl)ethyl]-thioureido}-
L-phenylalanine Methyl Ester

5

An equimolar solution of *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-*L*-prolyl]-*L*-(4-amino)-phenylalanine methyl ester and 2-morpholinoethyl isothiocyanate in toluene was stirred at room temperature for 16 hr. The solvent was stripped off giving a sticky white mass which was triturated in diethyl ether yielding a white powder, mp = 158-168°C.

10

Example 5

Synthesis of
N-(Toluene-4-sulfonyl)-*L*-prolyl-
4-(isonipecotamido)-*L*-phenylalanine

15

N-(Toluene-4-sulfonyl)-*L*-prolyl-*L*-(4-amino)phenylalanine methyl ester (9.0 g, 20 mmol) was taken into 300 mL of CH₂Cl₂, with HOBT (5.0 g), *N*-Boc-isonipecotic acid (4.6 g, 20 mmol), and DCC (5.0 g, 24.3 mmol). The mixture was stirred overnight at room temperature, filtered and concentrated in vacuo. The resulting residue was partitioned between 10% citric acid and EtOAc. The organic layer was washed with H₂O, saturated NaHCO₃, H₂O, dried over Na₂SO₄ and concentrated in vacuo yielding an amorphous solid. The resulting ester was converted to the acid using the procedure described in Method 6. The title compound was prepared following the procedure described in Method 10 as a solid, mp = 125-128°C.

20

25

NMR data was as follows:

30

¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆): δ = 8.60 (d, 1H), 8.30 (d, 1H), 8.05 (d, 1H), 7.70 (d, 2H), 7.50 (d, 2H), 7.40 (d, 2H), 7.15 (d, 2H), 4.40 (m, 1H), 4.10 (m, 1H), 3.00 (m, 5H), 2.60 (m, 3H), 2.40 (s, 3H), 1.95 (m, 2H), 1.80 (m, 2H), 1.60 (m, 4H)

Mass Spectroscopy: (FAB) (M+H)⁺ 543.

-- 105 --

Example 6

Synthesis of
N-(Toluene-4-sulfonyl)-*L*-prolyl-4-
[3*S*-2-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinoline-
3-carboxamido]-*L*-phenylalanine

Substitution of *N*-Boc-*L*-tetrahydroisoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid for *N*-Boc-isonipecotic acid, and following the methods for preparation of Example 5 (342), gave the ester of the title compound as an amorphous solid. The title compound was prepared using the procedure described in Method 6 as a solid, mp = 95°C.

NMR data was as follows:

¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆): δ = 8.05 (d, 1H), 7.70 (d, 2H), 7.43 (m, 4H), 7.18 (m, 6H), 5.60 (d, 1H), 4.60 (m, 2H), 4.40 (m, 3H), 4.10 (s, 1H), 3.00 (m, 6H), 2.20 (s, 3H), 1.25 (s, 9H).

Mass Spectroscopy: (ESI) (M+H)⁺ 691 (M + NH₄)⁺ 708.

Example 7

Synthesis of
N-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-*L*-prolyl-4-
{3-[2-(morpholin-4-yl)ethyl]-thioureido}-*L*-phenylalanine

The title compound was prepared from the product of Example 4 (335) using the procedure described in Method 6.

NMR data was as follows:

¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆, 400 Mhz): δ = 7.46 (d, 2H, J = 8.3Hz); 7.28 (d, 2H, J = 8.5Hz); 7.16 (d, 2H, J = 6.3Hz); 7.03 (d, 2H, J = 6.4Hz); 4.25 (dd, 1H, J = 8.2Hz, 5.1Hz); 3.82 (dd, 1H, J = 8.3Hz, 4.8Hz); 3.49 (t, 4H, J = 4.8Hz); 3.47-3.43 (m, 2H); 3.24-3.20 (m, 1H); 3.10-3.03 (m, 2H); 2.80 (dd, 1H, J = 9.7Hz, 8.8Hz); 2.30-2.29 (m, 3H); 2.25 (s, 3H); 1.72 (s, 1H); 1.69-1.64 (m, 1H); 1.55-1.42 (m, 1H); 1.42-1.30 (m, 1H).

IR (KBr, cm⁻¹): 3380; 3050; 2960; 2850; 2750; 1675; 1625; 1525; 1450; 1425; 1349; 1300; 1200; 1150; 1100; 850; 800; 675; 600; 550.

-- 106 --

Mass Spectroscopy: (+FAB) 602.3 (M-Li); 558.7; 505.0; 445.6; 399.7; 339.2; 283.3; 239.3; 175.1; 133.1.

Example 8

5

**Synthesis of
N-(Toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-
{3-[3-(morpholin-4-yl)propyl]-thioureido}-L-phenylalanine
Methyl Ester**

10

An equimolar solution of *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-L-(4-amino)phenylalanine methyl ester and 3-morpholinopropyl isothiocyanate in toluene was stirred at room temperature for 8 days then refluxed for 1.5 hr. After removal of the solvent, the residue was purified by flash chromatography (SiO₂:CH₃CN) to afford the methyl ester as an oil.

15

Example 9

20

**Synthesis of
N-(Toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-
{3-[2-(piperidin-1-yl)ethyl]-thioureido}-L-phenylalanine**

25

An equimolar solution of *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-L-(4-amino)phenylalanine methyl ester and 2-piperidinoethyl isothiocyanate in toluene was stirred at room temperature for 16 hr. The mixture was concentrated in vacuo giving an amber oil which was flash chromatographed (SiO₂; 25% CH₃OH/CH₃CN) yielding a white solid. The title compound was prepared using the procedure described in Method 6 as a solid, mp = 148-158°C.

NMR data was as follows:

30

¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆, 400 Mhz): δ = 7.48 (d, 2H, J = 8.1Hz); 7.29 (d, 2H, J = 8.1Hz); 7.17 (d, 2H, J = 8.1Hz); 7.04 (d, 2H, J = 8.1Hz); 4.26 (t, 2H, J = 6.4Hz); 3.83 (t, 2H, 6.6Hz); 3.63 (s, 2H); 3.25-3.24 (m, 2H); 3.09-3.05 (m, 2H); 2.84-2.81 (m, 4H); 2.25 (s, 3H); 1.72 (s, 3H); 1.67-1.66 (m, 2H); 1.53 (s, 4H); 1.39-1.36 (m, 2H).

-- 107 --

IR (KBr, cm⁻¹): 3400; 3050; 2960; 1600; 1525; 1475; 1400; 1349; 1250; 1150; 1080; 670; 600; 550.

Mass Spectroscopy: (+FAB) 573 (M+Li); 496; 411; 276; 224; 155; 91.

5 Anal. HPLC: (Primesphere C-18, 2.0x150mm; 40/60 CH₃CN/H₂O + 0.1% TFA; flow rate = 0.2 ml min⁻¹): 17.0 min retention time (94.7% purity).

Example 10

10

Synthesis of *N*-(Toluene-4-sulfonyl)-*L*-prolyl-4- {3-[3-(morpholin-4-yl)propyl]-thioureido}-*L*-phenylalanine

15 The title compound was prepared from the product of Example 8 (358) using the procedure described in Method 6.

NMR data was as follows:

20 ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆, 400 MHz): δ = 8.3 (brd s, 1H); 7.72 (m 3H); 7.39 (d, 2H, J=8Hz); 7.23 (d, 2H, J=8Hz); 7.01 (d, 2H, J=8Hz); 4.0 (m 2H); 3.5-3.0 (brd m, 43H); 2.38 (s, 3H); 2.28 (m, 5H); 1.72-1.36 (brd m, 6H).

IR (KBr, cm⁻¹): 3370, 2940, 1650, 1610, 1530, 1510, 1440, 1400, 1345, 1260, 1190, 1160, 1120, 675, 590, 550.

Mass Spectroscopy: (+FAB) 624 ([M+Li]⁺); 618; 586; 531; 496; 480; 434; 385; 369; 343; 311; 279; ; 224; 221; 187; 155; 115; 100; 91.

25 HPLC (Nucleosil C-18; 25% MeCN/0.01 M ammonium formate buffer pH=3.5; flow rate=0.2 ml/min): 9.3 min retention time (97% purity).

-- 108 --

Example 11

Synthesis of

***N*-(Toluene-4-sulfonyl-L-prolyl-4-[2S-1-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)pyrrolidine-2-carboxamido]-L-phenylalanine Methyl Ester**

5

An equimolar solution of *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-L-(4-amino)phenylalanine methyl ester, *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-proline, benzotriazol-1-yloxy-tris(dimethylamino)phosphonium hexafluorophosphate, and triethyl amine in acetonitrile were stirred at ambient temperature, under nitrogen, for 16 hr. The mixture was concentrated in vacuo giving an amber colored oil which was flash chromatographed (SiO₂, 6:1 CH₂Cl₂: CH₃CN) yielding the title compound as a white solid, mp = 97-99°C.

15

Example 12

Synthesis of

***N*-(Toluene-4-sulfonyl-L-prolyl-4-(nipecotamido)-L-phenylalanine**

20

Substitution of *N*-Boc-nipecotic acid for *N*-Boc-isonipecotic acid, and following the methods for preparation of Example 5 (342), gave the title compound as a white solid.

NMR data was as follows:

¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆): δ = 8.57 (s, 2H), 8.05 (d, 1H), 7.70 (d, 2H), 7.4 (dd, 4H), 7.15 (d, 2H), 4.41 (m, 1H), 4.10 (d, 1H), 3.00 (m, 8H), 2.40 (s, 3H), 1.60 (m, 8H).

25

Mass Spectroscopy: (FAB) (M+H)⁺ 543.

Example 13

30

Synthesis of

***N*-(Toluene-4-sulfonyl-L-prolyl-4-[2S-1-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)pyrrolidine-2-carboxamido]-L-phenylalanine**

35

The title compound was prepared from the product of Example 11 (395) using the procedure described in Method 6 as a solid, mp = 160-166°C.

-- 109 --

NMR data was as follows:

¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆, 400 Mhz): δ = 9.87 (s, 1H); 7.76 (d, 2H, J = 2.0Hz); 7.74 (d, 2H, J = 2.6Hz); 7.62 (d, 1H, J = 5.49Hz); 7.43-7.36 (m, 6H); 7.01 (d, 2H, J = 8.6Hz); 4.20-4.17 (m, 1H); 3.99-3.96 (m, 1H); 3.83 (q, 1H, J = 5.3Hz); 3.43-3.39 (m, 1H); 3.19-3.16 (m, 1H); 3.15-3.11 (m, 1H); 3.07-3.00 (m, 3H); 2.39 (d, 6H, J = 4.8Hz); 1.85-1.72 (m, 4H); 1.49-1.36 (m, 4H).

IR (KBr, cm⁻¹): 3350; 3030; 2960; 2850; 1660; 1600; 1525; 1450; 1425; 1350; 1250; 1160; 1100; 1000; 830; 675; 590; 550.

Mass Spectroscopy: (+FAB) 689.4 (M+Li); 681 (M-H); 673.4; 533.2; 392.1; 224.0; 91.1

Anal. HPLC: (Primesphere C18, 2.0x150mm; 40/60 CH₃CN/H₂O + 0.1% TFA; flow rate = 0.4 ml min⁻¹) 11.0 min retention time (95.8% purity).

Example 14

Synthesis of *N*-(Toluene-4-sulfonyl)-*L*-prolyl-4-[3-(2-phenylethyl)ureido]-*L*-phenylalanine

The methyl ester was prepared by the reaction of *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-*L*-prolyl-*L*-(4-amino)phenylalanine methyl ester with phenethyl isocyanate (triethylamine, toluene, reflux 1.5 hours). The resulting solid was removed by filtration and washed well with EtOAC to give the methyl ester as a white solid. The title compound was prepared using the procedure described in Method 6.

NMR data was as follows:

¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆, 400 MHz): δ = 12.77 (br s, 1H); 8.38 (s, 1H); 7.98 (d, 1H, J = 7.9Hz); 7.68 (d, 2H, J = 8.3Hz); 7.39 (d, 2H, J = 8.1Hz); 7.23 (m, 7H); 7.06 (d, 2H, J = 8.5Hz); 6.02 (t, 1H, J = 5.7Hz); 4.4 (m, 1H); 4.1 (dd, 1H, J = 3.18, 8.2Hz); 3.26 (m, 3H); 3.1 (m, 1H);

-- 110 --

2.98 (dd, 1H, J = 4.94, 13.7Hz); 2.88 (dd, 1H, J = 8.34, 13.83Hz); 2.7 (t, 2H, J = 7.1Hz); 2.38 (s, 3H); 1.39-1.65 (m, 4H).

IR (KBr, cm^{-1}): 3380, 2940, 2900, 1740, 1650, 1600, 1550, 1510, 1350, 1310, 1240, 1190, 1150, 655, 590, 545.

5 Mass Spectroscopy: ((+) FAB, m/e (%)) 601 (85, $[\text{M} + \text{Na}]^+$); 579 (20 $[\text{M} + \text{H}]^+$).

Example 15

Synthesis of

10 ***N*-(Toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-(thiamorpholin-3-carbonyl)-
4-(*N*-*tert*-butoxycarbonylisonipecotamido)-L-phenylalanine
Methyl Ester**

15 The title compound was prepared by dissolving *N*-(Toluene-4-sulfonyl)-
L-(thiamorpholin-3-carbonyl)-L-p-amino-phenylalanine methyl ester (1 eq.)
in dichloromethane with Et_3N (1.1 eq, 600 mL) and the suitable acid
chloride (1.1 eq). The title material was isolated as a solid, in 90% yield
(1.95 g, 3.55 mmol), mp = 191-193°C.

NMR data was as follows:

20 ^1H NMR (CDCl_3): δ 7.69 (m, 2H), 7.50 (m, 1H), 7.43, (m, 2H), 7.31
(m, 2H), 7.07 (m, 2H), 4.91 (m, 1H), 4.73 (m, 2H), 4.14 (m, 2H), 3.75 (s,
3H), 3.31 (m, 1H), 3.05 (m, 2H), 2.71 (m, 2H), 2.43 (m, 5H), 2.16 (m,
1H), 1.75 (m, 5H), 1.43 (s, 9H).

25 ^{13}C NMR (CDCl_3): δ 173.6, 172.1, 171.8, 168.3, 167.9, 155.3, 145.1,
137.9, 137.2, 131.9, 130.9, 130.5, 130.4, 127.7, 120.7, 80.3, 61.0, 56.0,
54.4, 53.9, 53.2, 53.1, 44.5, 44.1, 37.8, 37.2, 29.1, 29.0, 26.1, 25.5, 25.3,
22.2, 21.7, 14.8.

-- 111 --

Example 16

Synthesis of

***N*-(Toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-(1,1-dioxothiamorpholin-3-carbonyl)-4-(*N*-*tert*-butoxycarbonylisonipecotamido)-L-phenylalanine**

5

The title compound was from Example 15 (557) following the procedure described by Larsson and Carlson (*Acta Chemica Scan.* **1994**, 48, 522) and subsequent hydrolysis of the methyl ester.

10 NMR data was as follows:

¹H NMR (CD₃OD): δ 7.51 (m, 2H), 7.29 (m, 2H), 7.16 (m, 2H), 6.96 (m, 2H), 5.07 (m, 1H), 4.40 (m, 1H), 3.94-3.56 (m, 3H), 3.72-3.36 (m, 2H), 3.02-2.65 (m, 6H), 2.31 (m, 1H), 2.21 (s, 3H), 1.62 (m, 2H), 1.44 (m, 3H), 1.25 (s, 9H).

15

¹³C NMR (CD₃OD): δ 176.4, 176.3, 174.5, 174.4, 168.4, 168.2, 157.0, 146.8, 139.3, 137.9, 137.8, 134.2, 132.0, 131.5, 129.2, 122.1, 121.8, 81.7, 57.7, 57.6, 55.6, 55.4, 51.6, 51.5, 51.4, 51.4.

Example 17

20

Synthesis of

***N*-(Toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-(thiamorpholin-3-carbonyl)-4-(*N*-*tert*-butoxycarbonylisonipecotamido)-L-phenylalanine**25

The title compound was prepared following the procedure outlined for the preparation of Example 5 (342).

NMR data was as follows:

30

¹H NMR (CD₃OD): δ 7.60 (m, 2H), 7.29 (m, 2H), 7.13 (m, 2H), 6.98 (m, 2H), 4.61 (m, 1H), 4.44 (m, 1H), 3.89 (m, 3H), 3.09 (m, 3H), 2.72 (m, 2H), 2.59 (m, 2H), 2.39 (m, 2H), 2.20 (s, 3H), 1.97 (m, 1H), 1.61 (m, 2H), 1.47 (m, 2H), 1.39 (s, 9H).

¹³C NMR (CD₃OD): δ 176.3, 174.7, 170.8, 170.6, 157.0, 146.1, 139.3, 138.9, 134.3, 131.7, 131.5, 129.1, 122.0, 121.8, 81.7, 56.9, 55.7, 55.3, 45.4, 45.3, 45.2, 42.6, 38.3, 37.9, 30.2, 29.3, 28.6, 28.3, 26.8, 26.7, 22.2.

-- 112 --

Example 18

**Synthesis of
N-(Toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-(thiamorpholin-
3-carbonyl)-4-(isonipecotamido)-L-phenylalanine**

5

The title compound was prepared following the procedure outlined for the preparation of Example 5 (342).

NMR data was as follows:

¹H NMR (CD₃OD): δ 7.49 (m, 2H), 7.40 (m, 2H), 7.16 (m, 2H), 6.94
10 (m, 2H), 4.61 (m, 1H), 4.43 (m, 1H), 3.73 (m, 1H), 3.23 (m, 2H), 2.84 (m,
5H), 2.53 (m, 4H), 2.20 (m, 4H), 1.83 (m, 5H).

¹³C NMR (CD₃OD): δ 174.6, 147.6, 170.9, 170.8, 170.7, 170.7, 146.1,
139.5, 139.1, 139.1, 138.9, 138.8, 134.5, 134.5, 131.7, 131.6, 131.5,
130.5, 129.8, 129.0, 126.9, 122.0, 121.8, 56.9, 56.8, 55.6, 55.6, 55.2,
15 45.4, 45.1, 44.9, 42.2, 38.3, 37.9, 29.6, 28.4, 27.2, 26.8, 26.7, 22.1, 22.1.

Example 19

**Synthesis of
N-(Toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-(1,1-dioxothiamorpholin-
3-carbonyl)-4-(isonipecotamido)-L-phenylalanine**

20

The title compound was prepared from the product of Example 16 (560) using the procedure described in Method 10.

NMR data was as follows:

¹H NMR (CD₃OD): δ 7.54 (m, 2H), 7.33 (m, 2H), 7.17 (m, 2H), 6.95
25 (m, 2H), 4.99 (m, 1H), 4.42 (m, 1H), 4.05 (m, 1H), 3.74-3.27 (m, 2H),
3.23 (m, 2H), 2.97 (m, 3H), 2.85 (m, 2H), 2.70 (m, 2H), 2.50 (m, 1H),
2.21 (s, 3H), 1.72 (m, 4H).

¹³C NMR (CD₃OD): δ 174.7, 174.6, 174.5, 174.4, 168.5, 168.5, 146.9
30 ,139.1, 137.9, 134.4, 132.0, 131.6, 129.2, 122.1, 121.9, 27.8, 27.6, 55.6,
55.4, 51.6, 51.5, 51.4, 44.9, 43.8, 43.6, 42.2, 38.1, 38.0, 27.2, 22.2.

-- 113 --

Example 20

**Synthesis of
N-(Toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-[(1,1-dioxo)thiamorpholin-
3-carbonyl]-L-4-(isonipecotamido)phenylalanine
Ethyl Ester**

5

The title compound was prepared by hydrogenation of the corresponding pyridine derivative in MeOH (10 mL) with a catalytic amount of 10% Pd on C. The hydrogenation reaction was run at room temperature for 12 hours at about 40 psi. Upon filtration of the reaction mixture over celite, the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure yielding the title compound.

NMR data was as follows:

¹H NMR (CD₃OD): δ 7.79 (d, 1H), 7.70 (d, 1H), 7.54 (m, 2H), 7.49 (m, 2H), 7.16 (m, 2H), 5.19 (m, 1H), 4.63 (m, 1H), 4.14 (m, 2H), 3.67 (m, 1H), 3.48 (m, 2H), 3.29-2.74 (m, 7H), 2.41 (s, 3H), 2.05 (m, 5H).

15

¹³C NMR (CD₃OD): δ 167.9, 166.1, 161.9, 161.7, 140.1, 140.0, 132.4, 131.1, 127.5, 125.2, 125.1, 124.6, 122.4, 122.3, 115.2, 115.0, 56.3, 50.7, 48.9, 44.8, 44.5, 37.9, 36.7, 36.5, 35.1, 31.1, 22.2, 20.2, 15.1, 8.0.

20

Example 21

**Synthesis of
N-(Toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-[(1,1-dioxo)thiamorpholin-
3-carbonyl]-L-4-(isonipecotamido)phenylalanine
Isopropyl Ester**

25

The title compound was prepared following the procedure outlined for the preparation of Example 16 (560).

NMR data was as follows:

¹H NMR (CD₃OD): δ 7.72(m, 2H), 7.41 (m, 2H), 7.29 (m, 2H), 7.00 (m, 2H), 5.06 (m, 1H), 4.80 (m, 1H), 4.45 (m, 1H), 4.21 (m, 1H), 3.50 (m, 2H), 3.31 (m, 2H), 3.00-2.64 (m, 9H), 2.30 (s, 3H), 1.87 (m, 4H), 1.08 (m, 6H).

30

-- 114 --

¹³C NMR (CD₃OD): δ 74.3, 174.3, 172.1, 172, 168.2, 168.1, 146.5, 146.4, 138.8, 138.8, 137.6, 137.5, 133.8, 133.8, 131.6, 131.5, 131, 128.8, 128.7, 121.6, 121.4, 70.8, 70.8, 57.1, 57, 55.4.

5

Example 22**Synthesis of**

***N*-(Toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-[(1,1-dioxo)thiamorpholin-3-carbonyl]-L-4-(isonipecotamido)phenylalanine
Cyclopentyl Ester**

10

The title compound was prepared following the procedure outlined for the preparation of Example 16 (560).

NMR data was as follows:

¹H NMR (CD₃OD): δ 7.78 (d, 1H), 7.68 (d, 1H), 7.52 (m, 2H), 7.41 (m, 2H), 7.12 (m, 2H), 5.16 (m, 2H), 4.59 (m, 1H), 4.36-4.19 (m, 1H), 3.91 (m, 1H), 3.48 (m, 2H), 3.13-2.88 (m, 8H), 2.43 (s, 3H), 1.82-1.60 (m, 12H).

15

¹³C NMR (CD₃OD): δ 174.3, 172.5, 172.4, 168.3, 168.2, 146.5, 146.4, 138.8, 138.8, 137.7, 137.6, 133.9, 131.6, 131.5, 131.1, 128.8, 128.7, 121.6, 121.4, 80.1, 80, 67, 57.2, 55.5, 55.4, 51.2.

20

Example 23**Synthesis of**

***N*-(Toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-[(1,1-dioxo)thiamorpholin-3-carbonyl]-L-4-(isonipecotamido)phenylalanine
n-Butyl Ester**

25

The title compound was prepared following the procedure outlined for the preparation of Example 16 (560).

30

NMR data was as follows:

¹H NMR (CD₃OD): δ 9.89 (m, 1H), 7.90 (m, 2H), 7.49 (m, 2H), 7.41 (m, 2H), 7.11 (m 2H), 5.18 (m 1H), 4.60 (m 1H), 4.40 (m, 1H), 4.09 (m

-- 115 --

2H), 3.64 (m, 2H), 3.48 (m, 2H) 3.17-2.70 (m, 8H), 2.42 (s, 3h), 2.00 (m, 4H), 1.58 (m, 2H), 1.33 (m, 2H), 0.93 (m, 3H).

¹³C NMR (CD₃OD): δ 174.4, 172.2, 172.6, 168.3, 168.2, 146.5, 146.4, 138.9, 137.6, 137.6, 133.8, 131.6, 131.5, 131, 128.8, 128.7, 121.7, 121.6, 121.5, 121.4, 66.5, 57.1, 55.5, 55.3, 51.1, 51.1.

Example 24

Synthesis of

N-(Toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-(4-methylpiperazin-1-ylcarbonylamino)-L-phenylalanine Isopropyl Ester

The title compound was prepared by combining 1.0 eq of Ts-Pro-4-amino-Phe isopropyl ester and 1.0 eq of 4-nitrophenyl chloroformate to CH₂Cl₂. The mixture was capped with a septum. An N₂ line was attached. The flask was immersed in a 4:1 water/EtOH + dry ice slurry, and stirred to cool to -15°C. 2.5 eq Et₃N was added over several minutes with stirring, which was continued at -10 to -15 °C for 1 h. 1.0 eq N-methyl piperazine was added over 3 min with stirring. It was stirred overnight while warming to room temperature. The mixture was diluted with 700 mL hexanes and washed repeatedly with 10% K₂CO₃ until no yellow color (4-nitrophenol) was seen in the aqueous layer. It was then washed with sat. NaCl and dried with MgSO₄, filtered and evaporated. The resulting material was dissolved in EtOH, and evaporated to remove Et₃N. The procedure was repeated once. The resulting material was dissolved in EtOH, and water was added with stirring, precipitating a solid or oil. If an oil, it was stirred vigorously to solidify. The solid was isolated by filtration. Dissolution, precipitation, and filtration were repeated once. Traces of yellow color were removed by rinsing with water. High vacuum to constant mass yielded the title compound as a white solid.

NMR data was as follows:

¹H NMR (CD₃)₂SO: δ 8.43 (s, 1H), 8.20 (d, 1H), 7.70 (d, 2H), 7.40 (d, 2H), 7.36 (d, 2H), 7.08 (d, 2H), 4.86 (sept, 1H), 4.38 (q, 1H), 4.13-4.11

-- 116 --

(m, 1H), 3.41-3.31 (m, 5H), 3.10-3.05 (m, 1H), 2.97-2.91 (m, 2H), 2.39 (s, 3H), 2.29-2.26 (m, 4H), 2.17 (s, 3H), 1.65-1.41 (m, 4H), 1.16 (d, 3H), 1.11 (d, 3H).

¹³C NMR (CD₃)₂SO: δ 171.2, 170.8, 155.1, 143.7, 139.2, 134.1,
5 130.2, 130.0, 129.3, 129.3, 127.6, 119.4, 68.2, 61.2, 54.5, 53.7, 49.0,
45.7, 43.6, 35.9, 30.5, 23.8, 21.5, 21.4, 21.0.

Example 25

10 **Synthesis of**
 ***N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-(5,5-dimethyl)-thiaprolyl-4-[3S-2-(tert-**
 butoxycarbonyl)-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinoline-3-carboxamido]-L-
 phenylalanine tert-butyl ester

15 The title compound was prepared following the procedure outlined for
the preparation of Example 6 with the appropriate substitutions.

mp = 94-96°C

Example 26

20 **Synthesis of**
 ***N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-(5,5-dimethyl)-thiaprolyl-4-[3S-2-(tert-**
 butoxycarbonyl)-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinoline-3-carboxamido]-D-
 phenylalanine tert-butyl ester

25 The starting materials (2R)-3-(4-amino-phenyl)-2-{[(4R)-5,5-dimethyl-3-
(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-thiazolidine-4-carbonyl]-amino}-propionic acid tert-butyl
ester (630 mg), BOC-L-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid
(377 mg), 4-methylmorpholine (0.52 mL) and DMF (10 mL) were added
together at 0°C (in an ice bath). BOP (627 mg) was added to the solution.
The ice bath was removed after 10 minutes and the reaction mixture was
30 stirred at room temperature for 20 hours. Ethyl acetate (25 mL) was added
and the resultant mixture washed with citric acid solution (5%, 30 mL, 2x)
followed by saturated NaHCO₃ solution (2x), then washed with brine. The
solution was dried over MgSO₄. The solvent was evaporated in vacuo and
the residue was purified using reverse phase HPLC. The solvent was

-- 117 --

CH₃CN/water (75-95% CH₃CN). The retention time was 13 minutes.

Freeze drying yielded 20 mg of the title compound with a mp = 94-96°C.

Example 27

5

Synthesis of

***N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-(5,5-dimethyl)-thiaprolyl-4-[3S-2-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinoline-3-carboxamido]-L-phenylalanine tert-butyl ester**

10

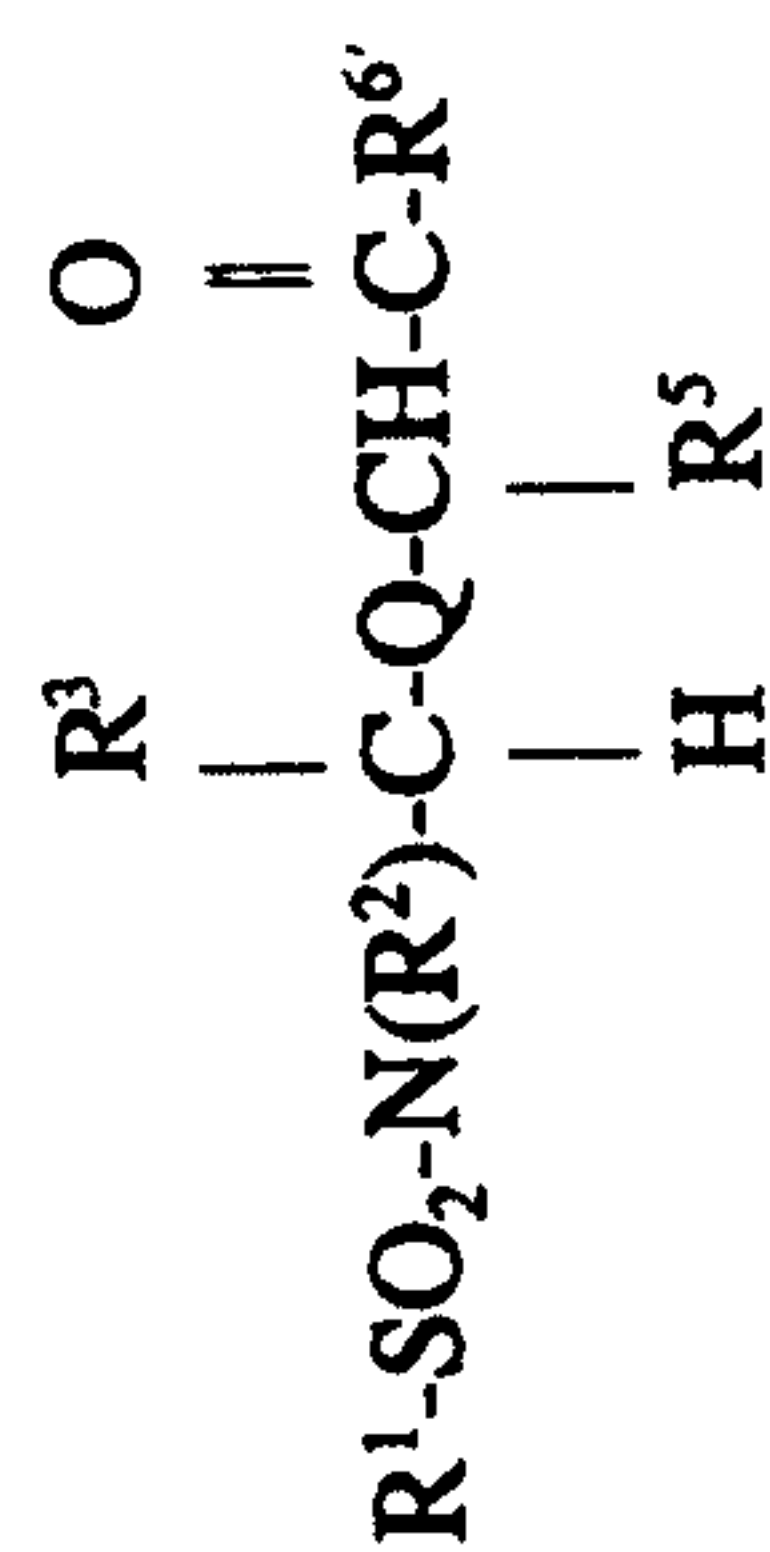
The starting materials (2R)-3-(4-amino-phenyl)-2-{[(4R)-5,5-dimethyl-3-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-thiazolidine-4-carbonyl]-amino}-propionic acid tert-butyl ester (630 mg), 3,4-dihydro-1H-isoquinoline-2-carboxylic acid-tert-butyl ester (377 mg), 4-methylmorpholine (0.52 mL) and DMF (10 mL) were added together at 0°C (in an ice bath). BOP (627 mg) was added to the solution. The ice bath was removed after 10 minutes and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 20 hours. Ethyl acetate (25 mL) was added and the resultant mixture washed with citric acid solution (5%, 30 mL, 2x) followed by saturated NaHCO₃ solution (2x), then washed with brine. The solution was dried over MgSO₄, filtered and evaporated in vacuo. The residue was purified using reverse phase HPLC in CH₃CN/water (75-95% CH₃CN) with a retention time of 12 minutes. The product (30 mg) was freeze dries at 0.5 Torr. mp = 94-96°C.

15

20

25

Other compounds prepared by the methods described above include those set forth in Table II below:



Q in all cases is $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NH}-$

R ¹	R ²	R ³	R ⁵	R ^{6'}	Ex. No.
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>p</i> -[-NHC(O)-(N-Boc)-L- pyrrolidin-2-yl)]-benzyl-	-OCH ₃	28
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>p</i> -[-NHC(O)-3-(N-Boc)-piperidinyI]-benzyl-	-OH	29
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>p</i> -[(piperidin-4-yl)C(O)NH-]-benzyl-	-OCH ₃	30
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>p</i> -[(1-Boc-piperidin-4-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OH	31

R ¹	R ²	R ³	R ⁵	R ⁶	Ex. No.
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>m</i> -[(1-Boc-piperidin-4-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OCH ₃	32
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>m</i> -[(1-Boc-piperidin-4-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OH	33
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>m</i> -[(piperidin-4-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OH	34
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>m</i> -[(1-Boc-piperidin-2-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OCH ₃	35
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>m</i> -[(1-Boc-pyrrolidin-2-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OCH ₃	36
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>m</i> -[(1-Boc-pyrrolidin-2-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OH	37
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>p</i> -[(piperidin-4-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OCH ₂ CH ₃	38

R ¹	R ²	R ³	R ⁵	R ⁶	Ex. No.
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyl)		<i>p</i> -[(1-Boc-pyrrolidin-2-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OH	39
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyl)		<i>p</i> -[(Et) ₂ NCH ₂ CH ₂ CH ₂ NHC(S)NH-]benzyl-	-OCH ₃	40
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyl)		<i>p</i> -[(1-Boc-4-hydroxypyrrolidin-2-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OCH ₃	41
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyl)		<i>p</i> -[φCH ₂ CH ₂ CH ₂ NHC(S)NH-]benzyl-	-OH	42
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyl)		<i>p</i> -[(perhydroindolin-2-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OH	43
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyl)		<i>p</i> -[φCH ₂ CH ₂ CH ₂ NHC(S)NH-]benzyl-	-OH	44
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyl)		<i>p</i> -[(1-Boc-perhydroindolin-2-yl)-C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OH	45

R ¹	R ²	R ³	R ⁵	R ^{6'}	Ex. No.
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>p</i> -[(4-hydroxypyrrolidin-2-yl)- C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OCH ₃	46
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>p</i> -(EtNHC(S)NH)benzyl-	-OCH ₃	47
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>p</i> -[(1-Boc-4-hydroxypyrrolidin-2- yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OH	48
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>p</i> -[(Et) ₂ NCH ₂ CH ₂ CH ₂ NHC(S)NH-]benzyl-	-OH	49
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>p</i> -(φCH ₂ NHC(S)NH)benzyl-	-OCH ₃	50
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>m</i> -[(1-Boc-piperidin-2-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OH	51
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>m</i> -[(piperidin-2-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OH	52

R ¹	R ²	R ³	R ⁵	R ⁶	Ex. No.
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyl)		<i>p</i> -[(3-Boc-thiazolidin-4-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OH	53
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyl)		<i>p</i> -[(3-Boc-thiazolidin-4-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OCH ₃	54
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyl)		<i>p</i> -(CH ₃ -NHC(S)NH)benzyl-	-OH	55
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyl)		<i>p</i> -(φCH ₂ NHC(S)NH)benzyl-	-OH	56
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic -CH ₂ -S-C(CH ₃) ₂ - (L-5,5-dimethyl thiazolidin-4-yl)		<i>p</i> -[(piperidin-4-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OH	57
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyl)		<i>p</i> -[(pyrrolidin-2-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OCH ₃	58
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyl)		<i>p</i> -[(1,4-di(Boc)piperazin-2-yl)- C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OCH ₃	59

R ¹	R ²	R ³	R ⁵	R ⁶	Ex. No.
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>p</i> -[(1,4-di(Boc)piperazin-2-yl)- C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OH	60
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>p</i> -[(piperazin-2-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OH	61
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>p</i> -[(1-Boc-piperidin-2-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OH	62
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>p</i> -[(piperidin-2-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OH	63
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>p</i> -[(1-Boc-piperidin-2-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OCH ₃	64
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>p</i> -[(1-Boc-2,3-dihydroindolin-2-yl)- C(O)NH]-benzyl-	-OH	65
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>p</i> -[(1-Cbz-piperidin-4-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OH	66

R ¹	R ²	R ³	R ⁵	R ⁶	Ex. No.
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	H	<i>tert</i> -butyl	<i>p</i> -[(piperidin-4-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OH	67
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic -CH ₂ -CH ₂ -C(CH ₃) ₂ - (L-4,4-dimethylpyrrolidinyI)		<i>p</i> -[(piperidin-4-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OH	68
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic -CH ₂ CH ₂ C(CH ₃) ₂ -		<i>p</i> -(2-Boc-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinolin-3-yl)- C(O)NH-)benzyl-	-OH	69
<i>p</i> -Br-φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>p</i> -[(piperidin-4-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OH	70
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic -CH ₂ CH ₂ C(CH ₃) ₂ - (L-4,4-dimethylpyrrolidinyI)		<i>p</i> -[(1-Boc-piperidin-4-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OCH ₂ CH ₃	71
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>p</i> -[(1-benzylpiperidin-4-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OCH ₃	72
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic -CH ₂ CH ₂ C(CH ₃) ₂ - (L-4,4-dimethylpyrrolidinyI)		<i>p</i> -[(piperidin-4-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OCH ₂ CH ₃	73

R ¹	R ²	R ³	R ⁵	R ^{6'}	Ex. No.
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>p</i> -[(4-hydroxypyrrolidin-2-yl)- C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OH	74
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>p</i> -[(piperidin-2-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OCH ₂ CH ₃	75
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>p</i> -[(1-Boc-piperidin-2-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OCH ₂ CH ₃	76
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>p</i> -(2-Boc-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinolin-3-yl)- C(O)NH-)benzyl-	-OCH ₂ CH ₃	77
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic -CH ₂ CH ₂ -SO ₂ -CH ₂ - (L-1,1-dioxothio morpholin-3-yl)		<i>p</i> -[(1-methoxycarbonylpiperidin-4- yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OCH ₂ CH ₃	78
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>p</i> -[(4-phenylpiperidin-4-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OCH ₂ CH ₃	79
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>p</i> -[(4-phenyl-1-Boc-piperidin-4-yl)- C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OCH ₂ CH ₃	80

R ¹	R ²	R ³	R ⁵	R ⁶	Ex. No.
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>p</i> -[(piperidin-4-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OCH ₂ CH ₃	81
φ-CH ₂ -	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>p</i> -(1-Boc-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroquinolin-2-yl)- C(O)NH-)benzyl-	-OCH ₂ CH ₃	82
φ-CH ₂ -	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>p</i> -[(1-Boc-piperidin-4-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OCH ₂ CH ₃	83
φ-CH ₂ -	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>p</i> -[(piperidin-4-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OH	84
φ-CH ₂ -	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>p</i> -(1-Boc-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroquinolin-2-yl)- C(O)NH-)benzyl-	-OH	85
φ-CH ₂ -	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>p</i> -[(1-Boc-piperidin-4-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OH	86
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)		<i>p</i> -[(1-Boc-4-phenylpiperidin-4-yl)- C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OH	87

R ¹	R ²	R ³	R ⁵	R ⁶	Ex. No.
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyl)		<i>p</i> -[(1-Cbz-piperidin-4-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OCH ₂ CH ₃	88
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyl)		<i>p</i> -[(pyrrolidin-2-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OH	89
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic -CH ₂ CH ₂ -SO ₂ -CH ₂ - (L-1,1-dioxothio morpholin-3-yl)		<i>p</i> -[(piperidin-4-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OC(CH ₃) ₃	90
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	CH ₃ -	<i>tert</i> -butyl-	<i>p</i> -[(1-Cbz-piperidin-4-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OCH ₃	91
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic -CH ₂ CH ₂ - (Cbz)NHCH ₂ - [L-4-N-(Cbz)- piperizinyl]		<i>p</i> -[(1-Cbz-piperidin-4-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OCH ₃	92
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyl)		<i>p</i> -[(piperidin-4-yl)NH(O)C-]benzyl-	-OCH ₃	93
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic -CH ₂ CH ₂ -NH-CH ₂ - (L-piperizinyl)		<i>p</i> -[(piperidin-4-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OCH ₃	94

R ¹	R ²	R ³	R ⁵	R ⁶	Ex. No.
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyl)		<i>p</i> -[(1-cyclopropylpiperidin-4-yl)- C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OCH(CH ₃) ₂	95
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyl)		<i>p</i> -[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OC(CH ₃) ₃	96
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ-	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyl)		<i>p</i> -[(piperidin-1-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OC(CH ₃) ₃	97
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyl)		<i>p</i> -[(2-methylpyrrolidin-1-yl)- C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OCH ₂ CH ₃	98
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyl)		<i>p</i> -{[(CH ₃) ₂ NC(S)] ₂ N-}benzyl-	-OCH ₃	99
<i>p</i> -CH ₃ -φ	R ² /R ³ = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyl)		<i>p</i> -[(CH ₃) ₂ NC(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OCH ₃	100

-- 129 --

Example 101

***In vitro* Assay For Determining Binding of
Candidate Compounds to VLA-4**

5 An *in vitro* assay was used to assess binding of candidate compounds to $\alpha_4\beta_1$ integrin. Compounds which bind in this assay can be used to assess VCAM-1 levels in biological samples by conventional assays (e.g., competitive binding assays). This assay is sensitive to IC_{50} values as low as about 1nM.

10

 The activity of $\alpha_4\beta_1$ integrin was measured by the interaction of soluble VCAM-1 with Jurkat cells (e.g., American Type Culture Collection Nos. TIB 152, TIB 153, and CRL 8163), a human T-cell line which expresses high levels of $\alpha_4\beta_1$ integrin. VCAM-1 interacts with the cell surface in an $\alpha_4\beta_1$ integrin-dependent fashion (Yednock, et al. J. Biol. Chem., 1995, 270:28740).

15

 Recombinant soluble VCAM-1 was expressed as a chimeric fusion protein containing the seven extracellular domains of VCAM-1 on the N-terminus and the human IgG₁ heavy chain constant region on the C-terminus. The VCAM-1 fusion protein was made and purified by the manner described by Yednock, *supra*.

20

 Jurkat cells were grown in RPMI 1640 supplemented with 10% fetal bovine serum, penicillin, streptomycin and glutamine as described by Yednock, *supra*.

25

 Jurkat cells were incubated with 1.5 mM $MnCl_2$ and 5 $\mu g/mL$ 15/7 antibody for 30 minutes on ice. Mn^{+2} activates the receptor to enhance ligand binding, and 15/7 is a monoclonal antibody that recognizes an activated/ligand occupied conformation of $\alpha_4\beta_1$ integrin and locks the

30

-- 130 --

molecule into this conformation thereby stabilizing the VCAM-1/ $\alpha_4\beta_1$ integrin interaction. Yednock, et al., *supra*. Antibodies similar to the 15/7 antibody have been prepared by other investigators (Luque, et al, 1996, J. Biol. Chem. 271:11067) and may be used in this assay.

5

Cells were then incubated for 30 minutes at room temperature with candidate compounds, in various concentrations ranging from 66 μ M to 0.01 μ M using a standard 5-point serial dilution. 15 μ L soluble recombinant VCAM-1 fusion protein was then added to Jurkat cells and incubated for 30 minutes on ice. (Yednock et al., *supra*).

10

Cells were then washed two times and resuspended in PE-conjugated goat F(ab')₂ anti-mouse IgG Fc (Immunotech, Westbrook, ME) at 1:200 and incubated on ice, in the dark, for 30 minutes. Cells were washed twice and analyzed with a standard fluorescence activated cell sorter ("FACS") analysis as described in Yednock, et al., *supra*.

15

Compounds having an IC₅₀ of less than about 15 μ M possess binding affinity to $\alpha_4\beta_1$.

20

When tested in this assay, each of the compounds in Examples 1-97 has an IC₅₀ of 15 μ M or less.

Example 102

25

In vitro Saturation Assay For Determining Binding of Candidate Compounds to $\alpha_4\beta_1$

30

The following describes an *in vitro* assay to determine the plasma levels needed for a compound to be active in the Experimental Autoimmune Encephalomyelitis ("EAE") model, described in the next example, or in other *in vivo* models.

-- 131 --

Log-growth Jurkat cells are washed and resuspended in normal animal plasma containing 20 $\mu\text{g/ml}$ of the 15/7 antibody (described in the above example).

5 The Jurkat cells are diluted two-fold into either normal plasma samples containing known candidate compound amounts in various concentrations ranging from 66 μM to 0.01 μM , using a standard 12 point serial dilution for a standard curve, or into plasma samples obtained from the peripheral blood of candidate compound-treated animals.

10

Cells are then incubated for 30 minutes at room temperature, washed twice with phosphate-buffered saline ("PBS") containing 2% fetal bovine serum and 1mM each of calcium chloride and magnesium chloride (assay medium) to remove unbound 15/7 antibody.

15

The cells are then exposed to phycoerythrin-conjugated goat F(ab')_2 anti-mouse IgG Fc (Immunotech, Westbrook, ME), which has been adsorbed for any non-specific cross-reactivity by co-incubation with 5% serum from the animal species being studied, at 1:200 and incubated in the dark at 4°C for

20 30 minutes.

Cells are washed twice with assay medium and resuspended in the same. They are then analyzed with a standard fluorescence activated cell sorter ("FACS") analysis as described in Yednock et al. J. Biol. Chem., 1995,

25 270:28740.

The data is then graphed as fluorescence versus dose, e.g., in a normal dose-response fashion. The dose levels that result in the upper plateau of the curve represent the levels needed to obtain efficacy in an *in vivo* model.

30

This assay may also be used to determine the plasma levels needed to saturate the binding sites of other integrins, such as the $\alpha_9\beta_1$ integrin, which is the integrin most closely related $\alpha_4\beta_1$ (Palmer et al, 1993, J. Cell Bio., 123:1289). Such binding is predictive of *in vivo* utility for inflammatory conditions mediated by $\alpha_9\beta_1$ integrin, including by way of example, airway hyper-responsiveness and occlusion that occurs with chronic asthma, smooth muscle cell proliferation in atherosclerosis, vascular occlusion following angioplasty, fibrosis and glomerular scarring as a result of renal disease, aortic stenosis, hypertrophy of synovial membranes in rheumatoid arthritis, and inflammation and scarring that occur with the progression of ulcerative colitis and Crohn's disease.

Accordingly, the above-described assay may be performed with a human colon carcinoma cell line, SW 480 (ATTC #CCL228) transfected with cDNA encoding α_9 integrin (Yokosaki et al., 1994, J. Biol. Chem., 269:26691), in place of the Jurkat cells, to measure the binding of the $\alpha_9\beta_1$ integrin. As a control, SW 480 cells which express other α and β_1 subunits may be used.

Accordingly, another aspect of this invention is directed to a method for treating a disease in a mammalian patient, which disease is mediated by $\alpha_9\beta_1$, and which method comprises administering to said patient a therapeutically effective amount of a compound of this invention. Such compounds are preferably administered in a pharmaceutical composition described herein above. Effective daily dosing will depend upon the age, weight, condition of the patient which factors can be readily ascertained by the attending clinician. However, in a preferred embodiment, the compounds are administered from about 20 to 500 $\mu\text{g/kg}$ per day.

-- 133 --

Example 103

***In vivo* Evaluation**

5 The standard multiple sclerosis model, Experimental Autoimmune (or
Allergic) Encephalomyelitis ("EAE"), is used to determine the effect of
candidate compounds to reduce motor impairment in rats or guinea pigs.
Reduction in motor impairment is based on blocking adhesion between
leukocytes and the endothelium and correlates with anti-inflammatory
activity in the candidate compound. This model has been previously
10 described by Keszthelyi et al., Neurology, 1996, 47:1053-1059, and
measures the delay of onset of disease.

 Brains and spinal cords of adult Hartley guinea pigs are homogenized in
an equal volume of phosphate-buffered saline. An equal volume of Freund's
15 complete adjuvant (100 mg *mycobacterium tuberculosis* plus 10 ml Freund's
incomplete adjuvant) is added to the homogenate. The mixture is emulsified
by circulating it repeatedly through a 20 ml syringe with a peristaltic pump
for about 20 minutes.

20 Female Lewis rats (2-3 months old, 170-220 g) or Hartley guinea pigs
(20 day old, 180-200 g) are anesthetized with isoflurane and three injections
of the emulsion, 0.1 ml each, are made in each flank. Motor impairment
onset is seen in approximately 9 days.

25 Candidate compound treatment begins on Day 8, just before onset of
symptoms. Compounds are administered subcutaneously ("SC"), orally
("PO") or intraperitoneally ("IP"). Doses are given in a range of 10mg/kg
to 200 mg/kg, bid, for five days, with typical dosing of 10 to 100 mg/kg SC,
10 to 50 mg/kg PO, and 10 to 100 mg/kg IP.

-- 134 --

Antibody GG5/3 against $\alpha_4\beta_1$ integrin (Keszthelyi et al., Neurology, 1996, 47:1053-1059), which delays the onset of symptoms, is used as a positive control and is injected subcutaneously at 3 mg/kg on Day 8 and 11.

5 Body weight and motor impairment are measured daily. Motor impairment is rated with the following clinical score:

	0	no change
	1	tail weakness or paralysis
10	2	hindlimb weakness
	3	hindlimb paralysis
	4	moribund or dead

15 A candidate compound is considered active if it delays the onset of symptoms, e.g., produces clinical scores no greater than 2 or slows body weight loss as compared to the control.

Example 104

Asthma Model

20 Inflammatory conditions mediated by $\alpha_4\beta_1$ integrin include, for example, airway hyper-responsiveness and occlusion that occurs with chronic asthma. The following describes an asthma model which can be used to study the *in vivo* effects of the compounds of this invention for use in treating asthma.

25 Following the procedures described by Abraham et al, J. Clin. Invest, 93:776-787 (1994) and Abraham et al, Am J. Respir Crit Care Med, 156:696-703 (1997), both of which are incorporated by reference in their entirety, compounds of this invention are formulated into an aerosol and
30 administered to sheep which are hypersensitive to *Ascaris suum* antigen. Compounds which decrease the early antigen-induced bronchial response and/or block the late-phase airway response, e.g., have a protective effect

-- 135 --

against antigen-induced late responses and airway hyper-responsiveness ("AHR"), are considered to be active in this model.

5 Allergic sheep which are shown to develop both early and late bronchial responses to inhaled *Ascaris suum* antigen are used to study the airway effects of the candidate compounds. Following topical anesthesia of the nasal passages with 2% lidocaine, a balloon catheter is advanced through one nostril into the lower esophagus. The animals are then intubated with a cuffed endotracheal tube through the other nostril with a flexible fiberoptic
10 bronchoscope as a guide.

Pleural pressure is estimated according to Abraham (1994). Aerosols (see formulation below) are generated using a disposable medical nebulizer that provides an aerosol with a mass median aerodynamic diameter of 3.2
15 μm as determined with an Andersen cascade impactor. The nebulizer is connected to a dosimeter system consisting of a solenoid valve and a source of compressed air (20 psi). The output of the nebulizer is directed into a plastic T-piece, one end of which is connected to the inspiratory port of a piston respirator. The solenoid valve is activated for 1 second at the
20 beginning of the inspiratory cycle of the respirator. Aerosols are delivered at V_T of 500 ml and a rate of 20 breaths/minute. A 0.5% sodium bicarbonate solution only is used as a control.

To assess bronchial responsiveness, cumulative concentration-response
25 curves to carbachol can be generated according to Abraham (1994). Bronchial biopsies can be taken prior to and following the initiation of treatment and 24 hours after antigen challenge. Bronchial biopsies can be preformed according to Abraham (1994).

-- 136 --

An *in vitro* adhesion study of alveolar macrophages can also be performed according to Abraham (1994), and a percentage of adherent cells is calculated.

5 Aerosol Formulation

A solution of the candidate compound in 0.5% sodium bicarbonate/saline (w/v) at a concentration of 30.0 mg/mL is prepared using the following procedure:

10 A. Preparation of 0.5% Sodium Bicarbonate / Saline Stock Solution: 100.0 mL

	Ingredient	Gram / 100.0 mL	Final Concentration
	Sodium Bicarbonate	0.5 g	0.5%
15	Saline	q.s. ad 100.0 mL	q.s. ad 100%

Procedure:

1. Add 0.5g sodium bicarbonate into a 100 mL volumetric flask.
2. Add approximately 90.0 mL saline and sonicate until dissolved.
- 20 3. Q.S. to 100.0 mL with saline and mix thoroughly.

B. Preparation of 30.0 mg/mL Candidate Compound: 10.0 mL

	Ingredient	Gram / 10.0 mL	Final Concentration
25	Candidate Compound	0.300 g	30.0 mg/mL
	0.5% Sodium Bicarbonate / Saline Stock Solution	q.s. ad 10.0 mL	q.s ad 100%

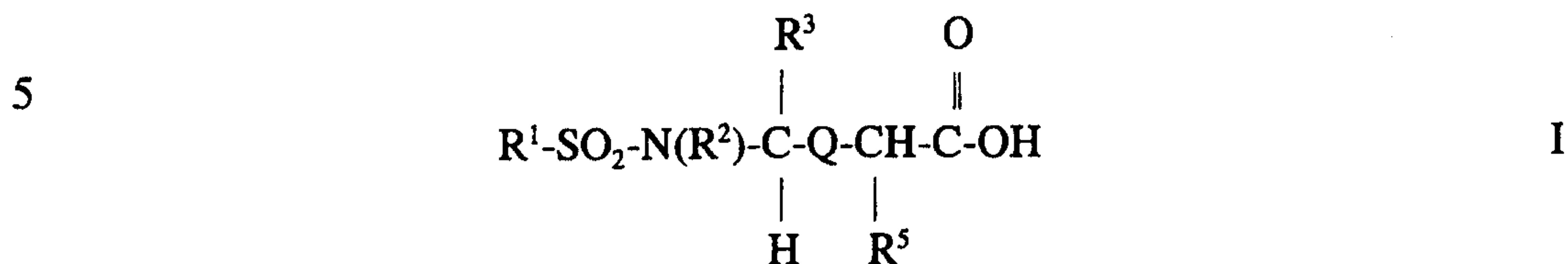
-- 137 --

Procedure:

1. Add 0.300 g of the candidate compound into a 10.0 mL volumetric flask.
 2. Add approximately 9.7 mL of 0.5% sodium bicarbonate / saline stock solution.
 3. Sonicate until the candidate compound is completely dissolved.
 4. Q.S. to 10.0 mL with 0.5% sodium bicarbonate / saline stock solution and mix thoroughly.
- 10 Using a conventional oral formulation, compounds of this invention would be active in this model.

WHAT IS CLAIMED IS:

1. A compound of formula I:



10 where

R^1 is selected from the group consisting of alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heterocyclic, substituted heterocyclic, heteroaryl and substituted heteroaryl;

15 R^2 is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, substituted cycloalkenyl, heterocyclic, substituted heterocyclic, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, and R^1 and R^2 together with the nitrogen atom bound to R^2 and the SO_2 group bound to R^1 can form a heterocyclic or a substituted heterocyclic group;

20 R^3 is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic, substituted heterocyclic and, when R^2 does not form a heterocyclic group with R^1 , R^2 and R^3 together with the nitrogen atom bound to R^2 and the carbon atom bound to R^3 can form a
25 heterocyclic or a substituted heterocyclic group;

R^5 is $-(\text{CH}_2)_x\text{-Ar-R}^{5'}$ where $\text{R}^{5'}$ is selected from the group consisting of -
30 $\text{NR}^{12}\text{C(Z)NR}^8\text{R}^{8'}$ and $-\text{NR}^{12}\text{C(Z)R}^{13}$ wherein R^{12} is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl and aryl, R^8 and $\text{R}^{8'}$ are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heterocyclic, substituted heterocyclic, heteroaryl and substituted heteroaryl provided that when Z is oxygen, at least one of R^8 and $\text{R}^{8'}$ is substituted alkyl, cycloalkyl, substituted

cycloalkyl, saturated heterocyclic other than morpholino and
thiomorpholino, or substituted heterocyclic, and R⁸ and R^{8'} can be joined to
form a saturated heterocycle other than morpholino or thiomorpholino, a
saturated substituted heterocycle or a saturated/unsaturated heterocycle
5 having an amino group substituted with an alkoxycarbonyl substituent, and
further provided that when Z is sulfur, at least one of R⁸ and R^{8'} is a group
other than aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl or substituted heteroaryl, R¹³ is
selected from the group consisting of saturated heterocycle other than
morpholino and thiomorpholino, and substituted heterocycle, and Z is
10 selected from the group consisting of oxygen, sulfur and NR¹² where R¹² is
as defined above,

Ar is aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl or substituted heteroaryl,

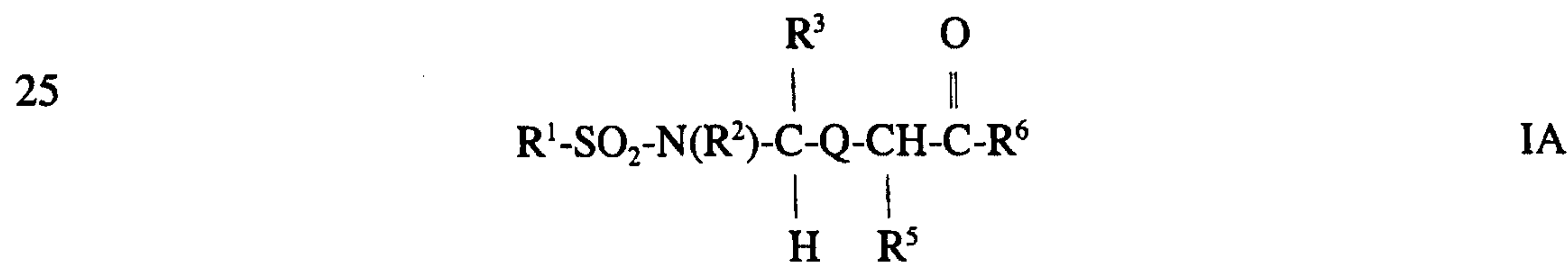
x is an integer of from 1 to 4;

15 Q is -C(X)NR⁷- wherein R⁷ is selected from the group consisting of
hydrogen and alkyl; and X is selected from the group consisting of oxygen
and sulfur;

and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof,

with the proviso that when R¹ is *p*-CH₃-φ-, Q is -NHC(O)-, and R² and
R³ are joined to form a pyrrolidinyl group, then R⁵ is not *p*-[-NHC(O)-2-(1-
20 Boc-4-Cbz-piperazinyl)]-benzyl- or *p*-[-NHC(O)-2-(1-Boc-piperazinyl)]-
benzyl-.

2. A compound of formula IA:



where

30 R¹ is selected from the group consisting of alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl,
substituted aryl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heterocyclic, substituted
heterocyclic, heteroaryl and substituted heteroaryl;

R^2 is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, substituted cycloalkenyl, heterocyclic, substituted heterocyclic, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, and R^1 and R^2 together with the nitrogen atom bound to R^2 and the SO_2 group bound to R^1 can form a heterocyclic or a substituted heterocyclic group;

R^3 is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic, substituted heterocyclic and, when R^2 does not form a heterocyclic group with R^1 , R^2 and R^3 together with the nitrogen atom bound to R^2 and the carbon atom bound to R^3 can form a heterocyclic or a substituted heterocyclic group;

R^5 is $-(CH_2)_x-Ar-R^{5'}$ where $R^{5'}$ is selected from the group consisting of $-NR^{12}C(Z)NR^8R^{8'}$ and $-NR^{12}C(Z)R^{13}$ wherein R^{12} is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl and aryl, R^8 and $R^{8'}$ are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heterocyclic, substituted heterocyclic, heteroaryl and substituted heteroaryl provided that when Z is oxygen, at least one of R^8 and $R^{8'}$ is substituted alkyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, saturated heterocyclic other than morpholino and thiomorpholino, substituted heterocyclic and R^8 and $R^{8'}$ can be joined to form a saturated heterocycle other than morpholino or thiomorpholino, a saturated substituted heterocycle or a saturated/unsaturated heterocycle having an amino group substituted with an alkoxycarbonyl substituent, and further provided that when Z is sulfur, at least one of R^8 and $R^{8'}$ is a group other than aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl or substituted heteroaryl, R^{13} is selected from the group consisting of saturated heterocycle other than morpholino and thiomorpholino, and substituted heterocycle, and Z is selected from the group consisting of oxygen, sulfur and NR^{12} where R^{12} is as defined above,

Ar is aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl or substituted heteroaryl,

x is an integer of from 1 to 4;

R^6 is selected from the group consisting of 2,4-dioxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl (3,4-enol), amino, alkoxy, substituted alkoxy, cycloalkoxy, substituted cycloalkoxy, -O-(N-succinimidyl), -NH-adamantyl, -O-cholest-5-en-3- β -yl, -NHOY where Y is hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, and substituted aryl, -NH(CH₂) _{p} COOY where p is an integer of from 1 to 8 and Y is as defined above, -OCH₂NR⁹R¹⁰ where R⁹ is selected from the group consisting of -C(O)-aryl and -C(O)-substituted aryl and R¹⁰ is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and -CH₂COOR¹¹ where R¹¹ is alkyl, and -NHSO₂Z where Z is alkyl, substituted alkyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic and substituted heterocyclic;

Q is -C(X)NR⁷- wherein R⁷ is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and alkyl; and X is selected from the group consisting of oxygen and sulfur;

and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof

with the proviso that when R¹ is p -CH₃- ϕ -, Q is -NHC(O)-, and R² and R³ are joined together with the nitrogen atom pendent to R² and the carbon atom pendent to R³ to form a 3,3-dimethylpyrrolidinyl group, then R⁵ is not p -[(piperidin-4-yl)C(O)NH]-benzyl-.

3. A compound according to Claims 1 or 2 wherein R¹ is selected from the group consisting of alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heterocyclic, substituted heterocyclic, heteroaryl and substituted heteroaryl.

4. A compound according to Claims 1 or 2 wherein R¹ is selected from the group consisting of 4-methylphenyl, methyl, benzyl, n -butyl, 4-chlorophenyl, 1-naphthyl, 2-naphthyl, 4-methoxyphenyl, phenyl, 2,4,6-trimethylphenyl, 2-(methoxycarbonyl)phenyl, 2-carboxyphenyl,

3,5-dichlorophenyl, 4-trifluoromethylphenyl, 3,4-dichlorophenyl,
 3,4-dimethoxyphenyl, 4-(CH₃C(O)NH-)phenyl, 4-trifluoromethoxyphenyl,
 4-cyanophenyl, isopropyl, 3,5-di-(trifluoromethyl)phenyl, 4-*t*-butylphenyl,
 4-*t*-butoxyphenyl, 4-nitrophenyl, 2-thienyl, 1-N-methyl-3-methyl-
 5 5-chloropyrazol-4-yl, phenethyl, 1-N-methylimidazol-4-yl, 4-bromophenyl,
 4-amidinophenyl, 4-methylamidinophenyl, 4-[CH₃SC(=NH)]phenyl,
 5-chloro-2-thienyl, 2,5-dichloro-4-thienyl, 1-N-methyl-4-pyrazolyl,
 2-thiazolyl, 5-methyl-1,3,4-thiadiazol-2-yl, 4-[H₂NC(S)]phenyl,
 4-aminophenyl, 4-fluorophenyl, 2-fluorophenyl, 3-fluorophenyl,
 10 3,5-difluorophenyl, pyridin-3-yl, pyrimidin-2-yl, 4-(3'-dimethylamino-
n-propoxy)-phenyl, and 1-methylpyrazol-4-yl.

5. A compound according to Claims 1 or 2 wherein R² is selected
 from the group consisting of hydrogen, methyl, phenyl, benzyl, -(CH₂)₂-2-
 15 thienyl and -(CH₂)₂- ϕ .

6. A compound according to Claims 1 or 2 wherein R¹ and R²
 together with the nitrogen atom bound to R² and the SO₂ group bound to R¹
 are joined to form a heterocyclic group or substituted heterocyclic group.
 20

7. A compound according to Claims 1 or 2 wherein R² and R³
 together with the nitrogen atom bound to the R² substituent and the carbon
 bound to the R³ substituent form a heterocyclic group or a substituted
 heterocyclic group.

8. A compound according to Claims 1 or 2 wherein R³ is selected
 from the group consisting of methyl, phenyl, benzyl, diphenylmethyl,
 -CH₂CH₂-COOH, -CH₂-COOH, 2-amidoethyl, *iso*-butyl, *t*-butyl, -CH₂O-
 benzyl and hydroxymethyl.
 25
 30

9. A compound according to Claims 1 or 2 wherein Q is preferably -C(O)NH- or -C(S)NH-.

5 10. A compound according to Claims 1 or 2 wherein R⁵ is selected from the group consisting of 4-[-NHC(O)CH(CH₃)NHBoc]benzyl, 4-[-NHC(O)CH(CH₂φ)NHBoc]-benzyl, 4-[-NHC(O)-(N-Boc)-pyrrolidin-2-yl]-benzyl-, 4-[-NHC(S)NHCH₂CH₂CH₂-φ]-benzyl, 4-[-NHC(S)NHCH₂CH₂-φ]-benzyl, 4-[-NHC(O)-(2',3'-dihydro-N-Boc-indol-2-yl)-benzyl, 4-[-NHC(O)-3'-(N-Boc)-piperidiny]-benzyl, 4-[-NHC(S)NHCH₂CH₂-(N-morpholino)]-benzyl, 4-[-NHC(O)-4'-piperidiny]-benzyl, 4-[-NHC(O)-(1',2',3',4'-tetrahydro-N-Boc-isoquinolin-1'-yl)-benzyl, 4-[-NHC(S)NHCH₂CH₂CH₂-(N-morpholino)]-benzyl, 4-[-NHC(S)NH(CH₂)₂-1-piperidiny]-benzyl, 4-[-NHC(S)NH(CH₂)₃-N-morpholino]-benzyl, 4-[-NHC(O)-L-2'-pyrrolidiny-N-SO₂-4'-methylphenyl]-benzyl, 4-[-NHC(O)-piperidin-3'-yl]-benzyl, 4-[-NHC(O)-(N-(4'-CH₃-φ-SO₂)-L-pyrrolidin-2'-yl)]-benzyl, 4-[-NHC(O)NHCH₂CH₂-φ]-benzyl, 4-[(1'-Cbz-piperidin-4'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl, 4-[(1'-Boc-piperidin-4'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl, 4-[-NHC(O)-1'-methylpiperidin-4'-yl]-benzyl, 4-[-NHC(O)-(1'-N-Boc)-piperidin-2'-yl]-benzyl, 4-[(Et)₂NCH₂CH₂CH₂NHC(S)NH-]benzyl, 4-[(1'-Boc-4'-hydroxypyrrolidin-2'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl, 4-[φCH₂CH₂CH₂NHC(S)NH-]benzyl, 4-[(perhydroindolin-2'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl, 4-[(1'-Boc-perhydroindolin-2'-yl)-C(O)NH-]benzyl, 4-[4'-hydroxypyrrolidin-2'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl, 4-(EtNHC(S)NH)benzyl, 4-(φCH₂NHC(S)NH)benzyl, 3-[(1'-Boc-piperidin-2'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl, 3-[(1'-Boc-piperidin-4'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl, 3-[piperidin-2'-yl-C(O)NH-]benzyl, 3-[piperidin-4'-yl-C(O)NH-]benzyl, 3-[(1'-Boc-pyrrolidin-2'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl, 4-[(3'-Boc-thiazolidin-4'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl, 4-(CH₃-NHC(S)NH)benzyl-, 4-[(pyrrolidin-2'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl, 4-[(1',4'-di(Boc)piperazin-2'-yl)-C(O)NH-]benzyl,

10 15 20 25 30

4-[(*N*-toluenesulfonylpyrrolidin-2'-yl)C(O)NH-]butyl, 4-[-NHC(O)-1'-*N*-Boc-piperidin-2'-yl]-benzyl, 4-[-NHC(O)-piperidin-2'-yl]-benzyl, 4-[(1'-*N*-Boc-2',3'-dihydroindolin-2'-yl)-C(O)NH]-benzyl, 4-[(1'-Cbz-piperidin-4'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl, 4-[-NHC(O)-(1',2',3',4'-tetrahydro-*N*-Boc-isoquinolin-3'-yl)-benzyl, 4-[(1'-Boc-piperidin-4'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl, 4-[(1'-methoxycarbonylpiperidin-4'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl, 4-[(4'-phenylpiperidin-4'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl, 4-[(4'-phenyl-1'-Boc-piperidin-4'-yl)-C(O)NH-]benzyl, 4-[(4'-methylpiperazin-1'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl, 4-[(pyrrolidin-2'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl, 4-[-NHC(O)-piperidin-1'-yl]benzyl, 4-[(thiomorpholin-4'-yl sulfone)-C(O)NH-]benzyl, 4-[-NHC(O)-4'-(1-benzylpiperidinyl)]benzyl, 4-[-NHC(O)-(1',2',3',4'-tetrahydro-*N*-Boc-quinolin-2'-yl)-benzyl, 4-[(pyrrolidin-1'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl and 4-[(1-cyclopropylpiperidin-4'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl.

11. A compound according to Claims 1 or 2 wherein R⁶ is selected from the group consisting of 2,4-dioxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl (3,4-enol), methoxy, ethoxy, *iso*-propoxy, *n*-butoxy, *t*-butoxy, cyclopentoxy, *neo*-pentoxy, 2- α -*iso*-propyl-4- β -methylcyclohexoxy, 2- β -isopropyl-4- β -methylcyclohexoxy, -NH₂, benzyloxy, -NHCH₂COOH, -NHCH₂CH₂COOH, -NH-adamantyl, -NHCH₂CH₂COOCH₂CH₃, -NHSO₂-*p*-CH₃- ϕ , -NHOR⁸ where R⁸ is hydrogen, methyl, *iso*-propyl or benzyl, O-(*N*-succinimidyl), -O-cholest-5-en-3- β -yl, -OCH₂-OC(O)C(CH₃)₃, -O(CH₂)_zNHC(O)W where *z* is 1 or 2 and W is selected from the group consisting of pyrid-3-yl, *N*-methylpyridyl, and *N*-methyl-1,4-dihydro-pyrid-3-yl, -NR''C(O)-R' where R' is aryl, heteroaryl or heterocyclic and R'' is hydrogen or -CH₂C(O)OCH₂CH₃.

12. A compound selected from the group consisting of *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-[2*S*-1-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)pyrrolidine-2-carboxamido]-L-phenylalanine methyl ester

- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-[3-(3-phenylpropyl)thioureido]-L-phenylalanine methyl ester
- 5 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-[3-(2-phenylethyl)thioureido]-L-phenylalanine methyl ester
- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-[1-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)indoline-2-carboxamido]-L-phenylalanine
- 10 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-[*N*-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)nipecotamido]-L-phenylalanine
- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-{3-[2-(morpholin-4-yl)ethyl]-thioureido}-L-phenylalanine methyl ester
- 15 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-(isonipecotamido)-L-phenylalanine
- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-[3*S*-2-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinoline-3-carboxamido]-L-phenylalanine
- 20 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-{3-[2-(morpholin-4-yl)ethyl]-thioureido}-L-phenylalanine
- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-{3-[2-(morpholin-4-yl)ethyl]-thioureido}-L-phenylalanine methyl ester
- 25 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-{3-[2-(piperidin-1-yl)ethyl]-thioureido}-L-phenylalanine
- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-{3-[3-(morpholin-4-yl)propyl]-thioureido}-L-phenylalanine
- 30 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-[2*S*-1-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)pyrrolidine-2-carboxamido]-L-phenylalanine methyl ester
- 35 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-(nipecotamido)-L-phenylalanine
- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-[2*S*-1-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)pyrrolidine-2-carboxamido]-L-phenylalanine
- 40 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-[3-(2-phenylethyl)ureido]-L-phenylalanine
- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-(isonipecotamido)-L-phenylalanine methyl ester
- 45

- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-(*N-tert*-butoxycarbonyl-isonipecotamido)-L-phenylalanine
- 5 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-3-(*N-tert*-butoxycarbonyl-isonipecotamido)-L-phenylalanine methyl ester
- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-3-(*N-tert*-butoxycarbonyl-isonipecotamido)-L-phenylalanine
- 10 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-3-(isonipecotamido)-L-phenylalanine
- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-3-(*N-tert*-butoxycarbonyl-pipecolinamido)-L-phenylalanine methyl ester
- 15 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-3-(1-*tert*-butoxycarbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxamido)-L-phenylalanine methyl ester
- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-3-(1-*tert*-butoxycarbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxamido)-L-phenylalanine
- 20 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-(isonipecotamido)-L-phenylalanine ethyl ester
- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-(2*S*-1-*tert*-butoxycarbonyl-pyrrolidine-2-carboxamido)-L-phenylalanine
- 25 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-{3-[3-(*N,N*-diethylamino)propyl]-thioureido}-L-phenylalanine methyl ester
- 30 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-(2*S*-1-*tert*-butoxycarbonyl-4-hydroxypyrrolidine-2-carboxamido)-L-phenylalanine methyl ester
- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-[3-(3-phenylpropyl)thioureido]-L-phenylalanine
- 35 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-[perhydroindole-2-carboxamido]-L-phenylalanine
- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-[3-(2-phenylethyl)thioureido]-L-phenylalanine
- 40 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-[1-*tert*-butoxycarbonyl-perhydroindole-2-carboxamido]-L-phenylalanine

- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-(2*S*-4-hydroxypyrrolidine-2-carboxamido)-L-phenylalanine methyl ester
- 5 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-[3-(ethyl)thioureido]-L-phenylalanine methyl ester
- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-(2*S*-1-*tert*-butoxycarbonyl-4-hydroxypyrrolidine-2-carboxamido)-L-phenylalanine
- 10 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-[3-(ethyl)thioureido]-L-phenylalanine
- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-[3-(benzyl)thioureido]-L-phenylalanine methyl ester
- 15 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-3-(*N*-*tert*-butoxycarbonyl-pipecolinamido)-L-phenylalanine
- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-3-(pipecolinamido)-L-phenylalanine
- 20 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-(2*R*-3-*tert*-butoxycarbonyl-thiazolidine-4-carboxamido)-L-phenylalanine
- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-(2*R*-3-*tert*-butoxycarbonyl-thiazolidine-4-carboxamido)-L-phenylalanine methyl ester
- 25 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-[3-(methyl)thioureido]-L-phenylalanine
- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-[3-(benzyl)thioureido]-L-phenylalanine
- 30 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-(5,5-dimethyl)thiaprolyl-4-(isonipecotamido)-L-phenylalanine
- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-(2*S*-pyrrolidine-2-carboxamido)-L-phenylalanine methyl ester
- 35 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-[1,4-di(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)piperazine-2-carboxamido]-L-phenylalanine methyl ester
- 40 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-[1,4-di(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)piperazine-2-carboxamido]-L-phenylalanine
- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-(piperazine-2-carboxamido)-L-phenylalanine
- 45

- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-(*N*-*tert*-butoxycarbonyl-pipecolinamido)-L-phenylalanine
- 5 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-(pipecolinamido)-L-phenylalanine
- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-(*N*-*tert*-butoxycarbonylpipecolinamido)-L-phenylalanine methyl ester
- 10 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-[1-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)indoline-2-carboxamido]-D-phenylalanine
- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-(*N*-carbobenzyloxy-isonipecotamido)-D-phenylalanine
- 15 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-2-(*tert*-butyl)glyciny-4-(isonipecotamido)-L-phenylalanine
- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-(thiamorpholin-3-carbonyl)-4-(*N*-*tert*-butoxycarbonylisonipecotamido)-L-phenylalanine methyl ester
- 20 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-(3,3-dimethyl)prolyl-4-(isonipecotamido)-L-phenylalanine
- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-(1,1-dioxothiamorpholin-3-carbonyl)-4-(*N*-*tert*-butoxycarbonylisonipecotamido)-L-phenylalanine
- 25 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-(thiamorpholin-3-carbonyl)-4-(*N*-*tert*-butoxycarbonylisonipecotamido)-L-phenylalanine
- 30 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-(thiamorpholin-3-carbonyl)-4-(isonipecotamido)-L-phenylalanine
- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-(1,1-dioxothiamorpholin-3-carbonyl)-4-(isonipecotamido)-L-phenylalanine
- 35 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-(3,3-dimethyl)prolyl-4-[3*S*-2-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinoline-3-carboxamido]-L-phenylalanine
- 40 *N*-(4-bromobenzenesulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-(isonipecotamido)-L-phenylalanine
- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-(3,3-dimethyl)prolyl-4-(*N*-*tert*-butoxycarbonylisonipecotamido)-L-phenylalanine ethyl ester
- 45

- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-*L*-prolyl-4-(*N*-benzylisonipecotamido)-*L*-phenylalanine methyl ester
- 5 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-*L*-(3,3-dimethyl)prolyl-4-(*N*-*tert*-butoxycarbonylisonipecotamido)-*L*-phenylalanine ethyl ester
- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-*L*-prolyl-4-[2*S*-4-hydroxypyrrolidine-2-carboxamido]-*L*-phenylalanine
- 10 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-*L*-[(1,1-dioxo)thiamorpholin-3-carbonyl]-*L*-4-(isonipecotamido)phenylalanine ethyl ester
- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-*L*-[(1,1-dioxo)thiamorpholin-3-carbonyl]-*L*-4-(isonipecotamido)phenylalanine isopropyl ester
- 15 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-*L*-prolyl-4-(pipecolinamido)-*L*-phenylalanine ethyl ester
- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-*L*-prolyl-4-[2*S*-(*N*-*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)pipecolinamido]-*L*-phenylalanine ethyl ester
- 20 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-*L*-prolyl-4-[3*S*-2-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinoline-3-carboxamido]-*L*-phenylalanine ethyl ester
- 25 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-*L*-[(1,1-dioxo)thiamorpholin-3-carbonyl]-*L*-4-(*N*-methoxycarbonylisonipecotamido)phenylalanine ethyl ester
- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-*L*-[(1,1-dioxo)thiamorpholin-3-carbonyl]-*L*-4-(isonipecotamido)phenylalanine cyclopentyl ester
- 30 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-*L*-prolyl-*L*-4-(4-phenyl-isonipecotamido)phenylalanine ethyl ester
- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-*L*-prolyl-*L*-4-(*N*-*tert*-butyloxycarbonyl-4-phenylisonipecotamido)phenylalanine ethyl ester
- 35 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-*L*-prolyl-*L*-4-(isonipecotamido)phenylalanine ethyl ester
- 40 *N*-(α -toluenesulfonyl)-*L*-prolyl-4-[1-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinoline-2-carboxamido]-*L*-phenylalanine ethyl ester
- N*-(α -toluenesulfonyl)-*L*-prolyl-*L*-4-(*N*-*tert*-butyloxycarbonylisonipecotamido)phenylalanine ethyl ester
- 45

- N*-(α -toluenesulfonyl)-L-prolyl-L-4-(isonipecotamido)phenylalanine
- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-[(1,1-dioxo)thiamorpholin-3-carbonyl]-L-4-(isonipecotamido)phenylalanine *n*-butyl ester
- 5 *N*-(α -toluenesulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-[1-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinoline-2-carboxamido]-L-phenylalanine
- 10 *N*-(α -toluenesulfonyl)-L-prolyl-L-4-(*N*-*tert*-butyloxycarbonyl-isonipecotamido)phenylalanine
- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-L-4-(*N*-*tert*-butyloxycarbonyl-4-phenyl-isonipecotamido)phenylalanine
- 15 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-L-4-(*N*-benzyloxycarbonyl-isonipecotamido)phenylalanine ethyl ester
- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-[2S-1-pyrrolidine-2-carboxamido]-L-phenylalanine
- 20 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-[(1,1-dioxo)thiamorpholin-3-carbonyl]-L-4-(isonipecotamido)phenylalanine *tert*-butyl ester
- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-*N*-methyl- α -*t*-butylglycinyL-L-4-(*N*-benzyloxycarbonylisonipecotamido)phenylalanine methyl ester
- 25 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-(*N*-benzyloxycarbonylpiperizin-2-carbonyl)-L-4-(*N*-benzyloxycarbonylisonipecotamido)phenylalanine methyl ester
- 30 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-(4-methylpiperazin-1-ylcarbonylamino)-L-phenylalanine isopropyl ester
- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-L-4-(isonipecotamido)phenylalanine methyl ester
- 35 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-(piperizin-2-carbonyl)-L-4-(isonipecotamido)phenylalanine methyl ester
- N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-(4-cyclopropylpiperazin-1-ylcarbonylamino)-L-phenylalanine isopropyl ester
- 40 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-(1-pyrrolidinyL)-L-phenylalanine *t*-butyl ester

N-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-(piperidine-1-carboxyamido)-L-phenylalanine *t*-butyl ester

5 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-L-4-[(1,1-dioxo)thiamorpholin-3-carboxyamido]phenylalanine *t*-butyl ester; and

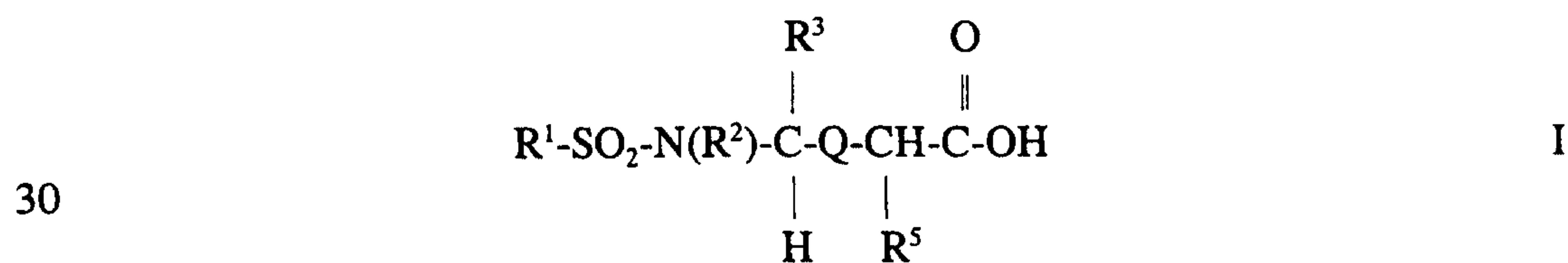
N-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolyl-4-(2-methylpyrrolidine-1-carboxyamido)-L-phenylalanine ethyl ester

10 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-(5,5-dimethyl)-thiaprolyl-4-[3S-2-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinoline-3-carboxamido]-D-phenylalanine tert-butyl ester

15 *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-(5,5-dimethyl)-thiaprolyl-4-[3S-2-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinoline-3-carboxamido]-L-phenylalanine tert-butyl ester

and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof as well as any of the ester compounds recited above wherein one ester is replaced with another ester
20 selected from the group consisting of methyl ester, ethyl ester, *n*-propyl ester, isopropyl ester, *n*-butyl ester, isobutyl ester, *sec*-butyl ester and *tert*-butyl ester.

13. A pharmaceutical composition comprising a pharmaceutically
25 acceptable carrier and a therapeutically effective amount of a compound of formula I::



where

*R*¹ is selected from the group consisting of alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl,
35 substituted aryl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heterocyclic, substituted heterocyclic, heteroaryl and substituted heteroaryl;

*R*² is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, substituted

cycloalkenyl, heterocyclic, substituted heterocyclic, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, and R^1 and R^2 together with the nitrogen atom bound to R^2 and the SO_2 group bound to R^1 can form a heterocyclic or a substituted heterocyclic group;

5 R^3 is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic, substituted heterocyclic and, when R^2 does not form a heterocyclic group with R^1 , R^2 and R^3 together with the nitrogen atom bound to R^2 and the carbon atom bound to R^3 can form a
10 heterocyclic or a substituted heterocyclic group;

R^5 is $-(CH_2)_x-Ar-R^{5'}$ where $R^{5'}$ is selected from the group consisting of -
15 $NR^{12}C(Z)NR^8R^{8'}$ and $-NR^{12}C(Z)R^{13}$ wherein R^{12} is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl and aryl, R^8 and $R^{8'}$ are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl,
20 substituted aryl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heterocyclic, substituted heterocyclic, heteroaryl and substituted heteroaryl provided that when Z is oxygen, at least one of R^8 and $R^{8'}$ is substituted alkyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, saturated heterocyclic other than morpholino and
thiomorpholino, or substituted heterocyclic, and R^8 and $R^{8'}$ can be joined to
25 form a saturated heterocycle other than morpholino or thiomorpholino, a saturated substituted heterocycle or a saturated/unsaturated heterocycle having an amino group substituted with an alkoxycarbonyl substituent, and
further provided that when Z is sulfur, at least one of R^8 and $R^{8'}$ is a group other than aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl or substituted heteroaryl, R^{13} is
30 selected from the group consisting of saturated heterocycle other than morpholino and thiomorpholino, and substituted heterocycle, and Z is selected from the group consisting of oxygen, sulfur and NR^{12} where R^{12} is as defined above,

Ar is aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl or substituted heteroaryl,

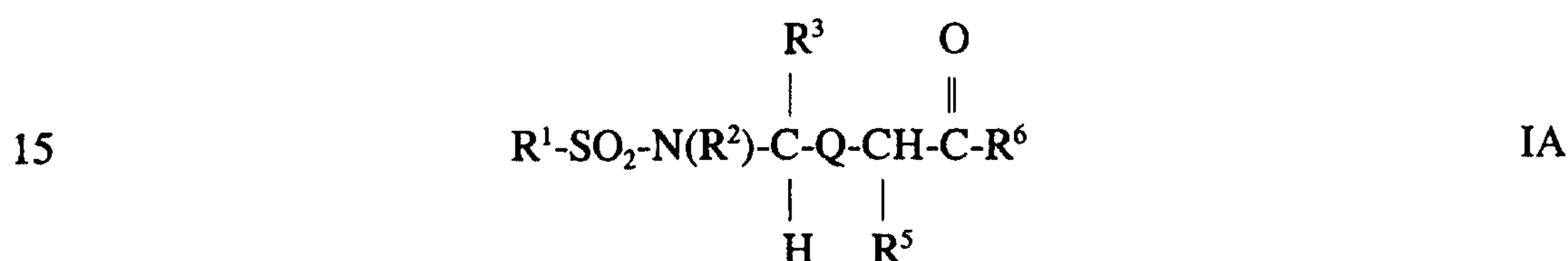
30 x is an integer of from 1 to 4;

Q is $-C(X)NR^7$ - wherein R^7 is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and alkyl; and X is selected from the group consisting of oxygen and sulfur;

and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof,

5 with the proviso that when R^1 is p -CH₃-φ-, Q is -NHC(O)-, and R^2 and R^3 are joined to form a pyrrolidinyl group, then R^5 is not p -[-NHC(O)-2-(1-Boc-4-Cbz-piperazinyl)]-benzyl- or p -[-NHC(O)-2-(1-Boc-piperazinyl)]-benzyl-.

10 14. A pharmaceutical composition comprising a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier and a therapeutically effective amount of a compound of formula IA:



where

20 R^1 is selected from the group consisting of alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heterocyclic, substituted heterocyclic, heteroaryl and substituted heteroaryl;

R^2 is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, substituted cycloalkenyl, heterocyclic, substituted heterocyclic, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, and R^1 and R^2 together with the nitrogen atom bound to R^2 and the SO₂ group bound to R^1 can form a heterocyclic or a substituted heterocyclic group;

30 R^3 is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic, substituted heterocyclic and, when R^2 does not form a heterocyclic group with R^1 , R^2 and R^3 together with the

nitrogen atom bound to R^2 and the carbon atom bound to R^3 can form a heterocyclic or a substituted heterocyclic group;

R^5 is $-(CH_2)_x-Ar-R^{5'}$ where $R^{5'}$ is selected from the group consisting of $-NR^{12}C(Z)NR^8R^{8'}$ and $-NR^{12}C(Z)R^{13}$ wherein R^{12} is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl and aryl, R^8 and $R^{8'}$ are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heterocyclic, substituted heterocyclic, heteroaryl and substituted heteroaryl provided that when Z is oxygen, at least one of R^8 and $R^{8'}$ is substituted alkyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, saturated heterocyclic other than morpholino and thiomorpholino, substituted heterocyclic and R^8 and $R^{8'}$ can be joined to form a saturated heterocycle other than morpholino or thiomorpholino, a saturated substituted heterocycle or a saturated/unsaturated heterocycle having an amino group substituted with an alkoxycarbonyl substituent, and further provided that when Z is sulfur, at least one of R^8 and $R^{8'}$ is a group other than aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl or substituted heteroaryl, R^{13} is selected from the group consisting of saturated heterocycle other than morpholino and thiomorpholino, and substituted heterocycle, and Z is selected from the group consisting of oxygen, sulfur and NR^{12} where R^{12} is as defined above,

Ar is aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl or substituted heteroaryl,
 x is an integer of from 1 to 4;

R^6 is selected from the group consisting of 2,4-dioxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl (3,4-enol), amino, alkoxy, substituted alkoxy, cycloalkoxy, substituted cycloalkoxy, $-O-(N\text{-succinimidyl})$, $-NH\text{-adamantyl}$, $-O\text{-cholest-5-en-3-}\beta\text{-yl}$, $-NHOY$ where Y is hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, and substituted aryl, $-NH(CH_2)_pCOOY$ where p is an integer of from 1 to 8 and Y is as defined above, $-OCH_2NR^9R^{10}$ where R^9 is selected from the group consisting of $-C(O)\text{-aryl}$ and $-C(O)\text{-substituted aryl}$ and R^{10} is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and $-CH_2COOR^{11}$ where R^{11} is alkyl, and $-NH\text{SO}_2Z$

where Z is alkyl, substituted alkyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic and substituted heterocyclic;

Q is -C(X)NR⁷- wherein R⁷ is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and alkyl; and X is selected from the group consisting of oxygen and sulfur;

and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof

with the proviso that when R¹ is *p*-CH₃-φ-, Q is -NHC(O)-, and R² and R³ are joined together with the nitrogen atom pendent to R² and the carbon atom pendent to R³ to form a 3,3-dimethylpyrrolidinyl group, then R⁵ is not *p*-[(piperidin-4-yl)C(O)NH]-benzyl-.

15. A pharmaceutical composition according to Claims 13 or 14 wherein R¹ is selected from the group consisting of alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heterocyclic, substituted heterocyclic, heteroaryl and substituted heteroaryl.

16. A pharmaceutical composition according to Claims 13 or 14 wherein R¹ is selected from the group consisting of 4-methylphenyl, methyl, benzyl, *n*-butyl, 4-chlorophenyl, 1-naphthyl, 2-naphthyl, 4-methoxyphenyl, phenyl, 2,4,6-trimethylphenyl, 2-(methoxycarbonyl)phenyl, 2-carboxyphenyl, 3,5-dichlorophenyl, 4-trifluoromethylphenyl, 3,4-dichlorophenyl, 3,4-dimethoxyphenyl, 4-(CH₃C(O)NH-)phenyl, 4-trifluoromethoxyphenyl, 4-cyanophenyl, isopropyl, 3,5-di-(trifluoromethyl)phenyl, 4-*t*-butylphenyl, 4-*t*-butoxyphenyl, 4-nitrophenyl, 2-thienyl, 1-N-methyl-3-methyl-5-chloropyrazol-4-yl, phenethyl, 1-N-methylimidazol-4-yl, 4-bromophenyl, 4-amidinophenyl, 4-methylamidinophenyl, 4-[CH₃SC(=NH)]phenyl, 5-chloro-2-thienyl, 2,5-dichloro-4-thienyl, 1-N-methyl-4-pyrazolyl, 2-thiazolyl, 5-methyl-1,3,4-thiadiazol-2-yl, 4-[H₂NC(S)]phenyl, 4-aminophenyl, 4-fluorophenyl, 2-

fluorophenyl, 3-fluorophenyl, 3,5-difluorophenyl, pyridin-3-yl, pyrimidin-2-yl, 4-(3'-dimethylamino-*n*-propoxy)-phenyl, and 1-methylpyrazol-4-yl.

17. A pharmaceutical composition according to Claims 13 or 14
5 wherein R² is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, methyl, phenyl, benzyl, -(CH₂)₂-2-thienyl and -(CH₂)₂-φ.

18. A pharmaceutical composition according to Claims 13 or 14
10 wherein R¹ and R² together with the nitrogen atom bound to R² and the SO₂ group bound to R¹ are joined to form a heterocyclic group or substituted heterocyclic group.

19. A pharmaceutical composition according to Claims 13 or 14
15 wherein R² and R³ together with the nitrogen atom bound to the R² substituent and the carbon bound to the R³ substituent form a heterocyclic group or a substituted heterocyclic group.

20. A pharmaceutical composition according to Claims 13 or 14
20 wherein R³ is selected from the group consisting of methyl, phenyl, benzyl, diphenylmethyl, -CH₂CH₂-COOH, -CH₂-COOH, 2-amidoethyl, *iso*-butyl, *t*-butyl, -CH₂O-benzyl and hydroxymethyl.

21. A pharmaceutical composition according to Claims 13 or 14
25 wherein Q is preferably -C(O)NH- or -C(S)NH-.

22. A pharmaceutical composition according to Claims 13 or 14
wherein R⁵ is selected from the group consisting of 4-[-
NHC(O)CH(CH₃)NHBoc]benzyl, 4-[-NHC(O)CH(CH₂φ)NHBoc]-benzyl, 4-
[-NHC(O)-(N-Boc)-pyrrolidin-2-yl]-benzyl-, 4-[-NHC(S)NHCH₂CH₂CH₂-
30 φ]-benzyl, 4-[-NHC(S)NHCH₂CH₂-φ]-benzyl, 4-[-NHC(O)-(2',3'-dihydro-
N-Boc-indol-2-yl)]-benzyl, 4-[-NHC(O)-3'-(N-Boc)-piperidinyl]-benzyl,

- 4-[-NHC(S)NHCH₂CH₂-(N-morpholino)]-benzyl, 4-[-NHC(O)-4'-piperidiny]benzyl, 4-[-NHC(O)-(1',2',3',4'-tetrahydro-N-Boc-isoquinolin-1'-yl)]-benzyl, 4-[-NHC(S)NHCH₂CH₂CH₂-(N-morpholino)]-benzyl, 4-[-NHC(S)NH(CH₂)₂-1-piperidiny]benzyl, 4-[-NHC(S)NH(CH₂)₃-N-morpholino]benzyl, 4-[-NHC(O)-L-2'-pyrrolidiny-N-SO₂-4'-methylphenyl]benzyl, 4-[-NHC(O)-piperidin-3'-yl]benzyl, 4-[-NHC(O)-(N-(4'-CH₃-φ-SO₂)-L-pyrrolidin-2'-yl)]benzyl, 4-[-NHC(O)NHCH₂CH₂-φ]benzyl, 4-[(1'-Cbz-piperidin-4'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl, 4-[(1'-Boc-piperidin-4'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl, 4-[-NHC(O)-1'-methylpiperidin-4'-yl]benzyl, 4-[-NHC(O)-(1'-N-Boc)-piperidin-2'-yl]benzyl, 4-[(Et)₂NCH₂CH₂CH₂NHC(S)NH-]benzyl, 4-[(1'-Boc-4'-hydroxypyrrolidin-2'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl, 4-[φCH₂CH₂CH₂NHC(S)NH-]benzyl, 4-[(perhydroindolin-2'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl, 4-[(1'-Boc-perhydroindolin-2'-yl)-C(O)NH-]benzyl, 4-[4'-hydroxypyrrolidin-2'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl, 4-(EtNHC(S)NH)benzyl, 4-(φCH₂NHC(S)NH)benzyl, 3-[(1'-Boc-piperidin-2'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl, 3-[(1'-Boc-piperidin-4'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl, 3-[piperidin-2'-yl-C(O)NH-]benzyl, 3-[piperidin-4'-yl-C(O)NH-]benzyl, 3-[(1'-Boc-pyrrolidin-2'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl, 4-[(3'-Boc-thiazolidin-4'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl, 4-(CH₃-NHC(S)NH)benzyl, 4-[(pyrrolidin-2'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl, 4-[(1',4'-di(Boc)piperazin-2'-yl)-C(O)NH-]benzyl, 4-[(N-toluenesulfonylpyrrolidin-2'-yl)C(O)NH-]butyl, 4-[-NHC(O)-1'-N-Boc-piperidin-2'-yl]benzyl, 4-[-NHC(O)-piperidin-2'-yl]benzyl, 4-[(1'-N-Boc-2',3'-dihydroindolin-2'-yl)-C(O)NH-]benzyl, 4-[(1'-Cbz-piperidin-4'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl, 4-[-NHC(O)-(1',2',3',4'-tetrahydro-N-Boc-isoquinolin-3'-yl)]benzyl, 4-[(1'-Boc-piperidin-4'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl, 4-[(1'-methoxycarbonylpiperidin-4'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl, 4-[(4'-phenylpiperidin-4'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl, 4-[(4'-phenyl-1'-Boc-piperidin-4'-yl)-C(O)NH-]benzyl, 4-[(4'-methylpiperazin-1'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl, 4-[(pyrrolidin-2'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl, 4-[-NHC(O)-piperidin-1'-yl]benzyl, 4-[(thiomorpholin-4'-yl sulfone)-C(O)NH-]benzyl, 4-[-NHC(O)-4'-(1-benzylpiperidiny)]benzyl,

4-[-NHC(O)-(1',2',3',4'-tetrahydro-N-Boc-quinolin-2'-yl)]-benzyl,
4-[(pyrrolidin-1'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl and 4-[(1-cyclopropylpiperidin-4'-
yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl.

- 5 23. A pharmaceutical composition according to Claims 13 or 14
wherein R⁶ is selected from the group consisting of 2,4-dioxo-
tetrahydrofuran-3-yl (3,4-enol), methoxy, ethoxy, *iso*-propoxy, *n*-butoxy, *t*-
butoxy, cyclopentoxy, *neo*-pentoxy, 2- α -*iso*-propyl-4- β -methylcyclohexoxy,
2- β -isopropyl-4- β -methylcyclohexoxy, -NH₂, benzyloxy, -NHCH₂COOH, -
10 NHCH₂CH₂COOH, -NH-adamantyl, -NHCH₂CH₂COOCH₂CH₃, -NHSO₂-*p*-
CH₃- ϕ , -NHOR⁸ where R⁸ is hydrogen, methyl, *iso*-propyl or benzyl, O-(N-
succinimidyl), -O-cholest-5-en-3- β -yl, -OCH₂-OC(O)C(CH₃)₃,
-O(CH₂)_zNHC(O)W where z is 1 or 2 and W is selected from the group
consisting of pyrid-3-yl, N-methylpyridyl, and N-methyl-1,4-dihydro-pyrid-
15 3-yl, -NR''C(O)-R' where R' is aryl, heteroaryl or heterocyclic and R'' is
hydrogen or -CH₂C(O)OCH₂CH₃.

24. A method for binding VLA-4 in a biological sample which
method comprises contacting the biological sample with a compound of
20 Claim 1 or 2 under conditions wherein said compound binds to VLA-4.

25. A method for treating an inflammatory condition in a mammalian
patient which condition is mediated by VLA-4 which method comprises
administering to said patient a therapeutically effective amount of the
25 pharmaceutical composition of Claims 13 or 14.

26. The method according to Claim 25 wherein said inflammatory
condition is selected from the group consisting of asthma, Alzheimer's
disease, atherosclerosis, AIDS dementia, diabetes, inflammatory bowel
30 disease, multiple sclerosis, rheumatoid arthritis, tissue transplantation, tumor

metastasis, meningitis, encephalitis, stroke, nephritis, retinitis, atopic dermatitis, psoriasis, myocardial ischemia and acute leukocyte-mediated lung injury.